



**Key Indicator – 4.2 : Library as a Learning Resource**

**Metric: 4.2.1**

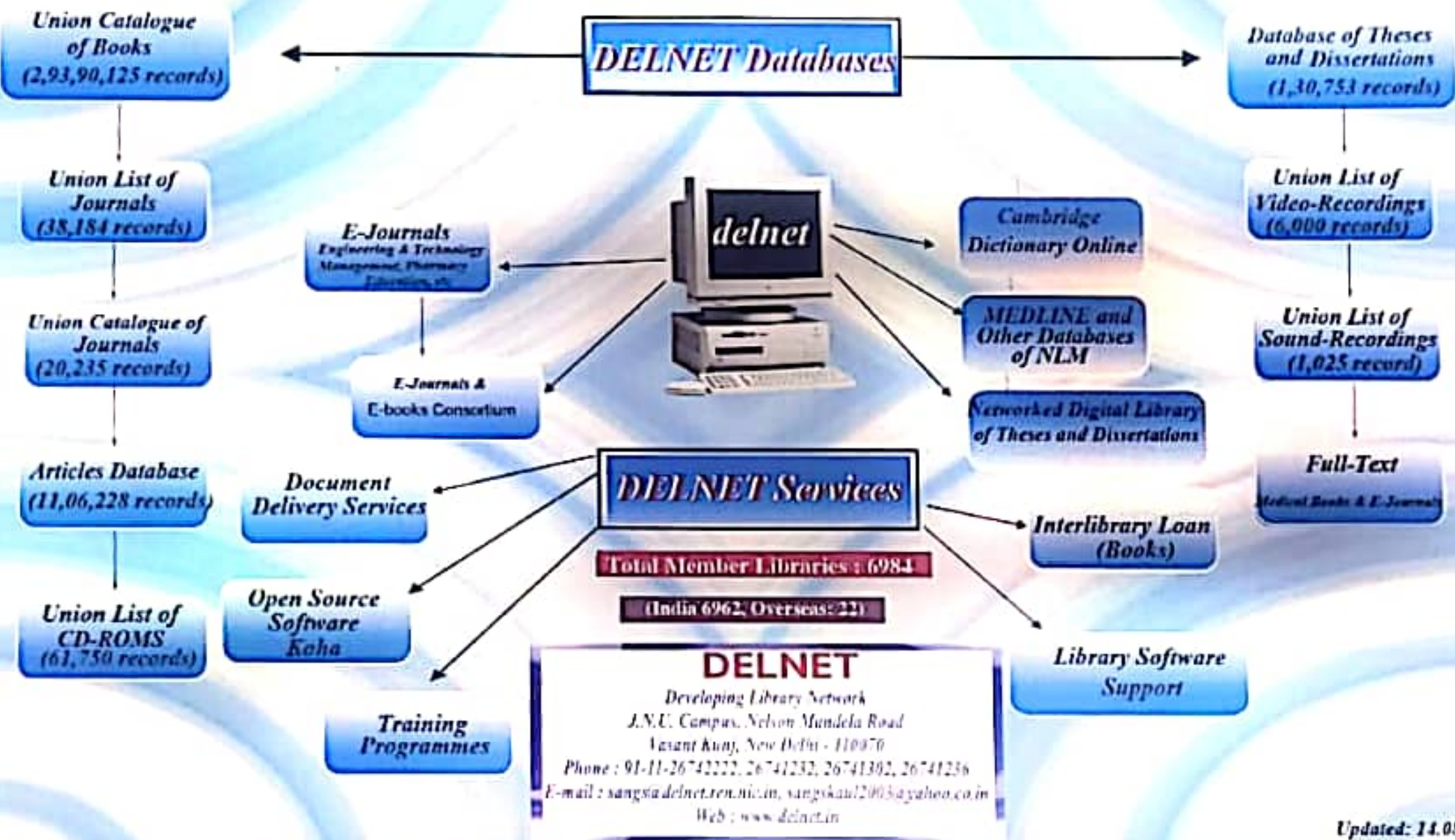
**Manual of Delnet, Soul 2.0 & Soul 3.0**



***GOVT. M. H. COLLEGE OF HOME SCIENCE  
AND SCIENCE FOR WOMEN, JABALPUR  
SESSION 2019-20 TO 2023-24***

# DELNET

Knowledge flows through delnet, Access it



Updated: 14.08.202



**11. Database Creation**

DELNET advises the participating libraries on the creation of bibliographic databases, as we consider that for effective networking, standard bibliographic data should be available in machine-readable form with the libraries. DELNET has recently launched DELNET Best Practices - Data Sharing Accessibility Initiative wherein certificates and awards will be given to member institutions.

**12. DELNET Guest House Facilities**

DELNET Guest House is operational. Guest House has 15 Double Rooms, Two Suites, Three Committee Rooms, One Coffee Lounge and Multipurpose/Dining Hall. The rooms are air conditioned with attached bath facility and are equipped with high quality furniture and fixtures to offer comfort to our guests.

Academics, Officials of Member Institutions of DELNET, and those recommended by them can avail of the facility. Also, the facility can be availed of by academics visiting Delhi for official meetings, training, teaching and research.

The following is the tariff for Guest House rooms:

Rooms		
a. Single occupancy	Rs. 2,455 + 12% GST = Rs. 2,750	
b. Double occupancy	Rs. 3,051 + 12% GST = Rs. 3,417	
c. Suite	Rs. 4,068 + 12% GST = Rs. 4,556	

The rates for other facilities can be provided on request. Kindly send an email to delnetguesthouse@gmail.com or call 09010129992

**PUBLICATIONS**

**1. NACLIN Proceedings**

The proceedings of the National Convention on Knowledge Library and Information Networking (NACLIN) are published every year since 1998. The volumes are available on sale. Twenty per cent discount is given to Libraries.

**2. DELNET Newsletter**

The DELNET Newsletter is published to spread the message of library networking and increase the awareness about latest developments in this field. The Newsletter is also a forum for communication on the advances, achievements and needs of the modern-day libraries and their services.

**3. Director's Report**

Director's Report is published every year since 1993.

**4. Other Publications**

Important publications based on seminars and research are published periodically.

**RESEARCH**

DELNET conducts research in the following areas:

- Use of International Standards**  
DELNET was the first to introduce in India the use of MARC 21 standards among the libraries. Special training programmes are organised from time to time in the use of MARC 21 Standard.
- Open Source Software**  
DELNET gives training in the use of Koha - an Open Source Integrated Library System and DSpace for building Digital Libraries and also Moodle- E-learning platform. DELNET also offers consultancy to libraries in implementing these Open Source Software.

**DELNET INITIATIVES**

- Networking of AICTE Approved Institutions**  
DELNET signed an MOU with the All India Council for Technical Education (AICTE) in 2004 to modernise and network through DELNET all libraries of the technical institutions approved by AICTE in the country.
- National Bibliographic Database**  
DELNET undertook the compilation of the National Bibliographic Database as a pilot project with the support of the Department of Culture, Government of India in 1999. Records were created in Tamil, Punjabi, Telega, Sanskrit, Bengali and English.
- Knowledge Centres**  
DELNET promotes the establishment of Knowledge Centres and offers consultancy for setting up Knowledge Centre.

**DELNET MEMBERSHIP**

**1. Membership Statistics**

DELNET at present has 7950 libraries as its members. The following is a brief geographical break-up:

India (in 33 States and centrally administered areas)	7926
Outside India	24
<b>Total:</b>	<b>7950</b>

**2. Who Can Join**

Any Institution/Library interested in using DELNET resources for research, reference, and having any number of books in its library can join as an institutional member of DELNET.

**3. Membership Forms**

The application and MOU forms are available at the Website. Libraries interested in joining DELNET should apply by submitting the membership forms with payment of ₹ 19470/- The fees for membership are kept very low. At present the rates are as follows:

**Membership Rates**

<b>India and other SAARC Countries</b>	
Admission Fee (one time)	₹ 5,000 + 18% GST
Annual Institutional Membership Fee	₹ 11,500 per annum + 18% GST
<b>New SAARC Countries</b>	
Admission Fee (one time)	US \$ 100 + 18% GST
Annual Institutional Membership Fee	US \$ 500 per annum + 18% GST

GSTIN of DELNET is 07ASAS1220BL1ZV

For a new membership, the payment of ₹ 19,470/- may kindly be sent through DD to be drawn in favour of "DELNET" and payable to New Delhi. Payment can also be sent through NEFT/RTGS/Banking/IMPS/UPI etc. Please note that the DELNET membership is valid for 365 days from the date of admission and needs to be renewed annually by making a payment of ₹ 11,570 to DELNET.

**DELNET Guest House**

**Networking Libraries  
Sharing and Spreading Knowledge**

**DELNET-Developing Library Network**  
J.N.U. Campus, New Delhi (Near Dr. Vasant Kunj)  
New Delhi - 110078  
Tel: 91-11-26741266, 26741267, 26741302, 26741268; Mobile: 9810329992  
E-mail: sangi@delnet.jnucampus@delnetren.aic.in  
Web: www.delnet.in

April 12, 2023



## About DELNET

DELNET Developing Library Network, New Delhi, is a major Resource Sharing Library Network in India connecting more than 7950 institutions in 23 states in India and few other countries comprising of Universities, Colleges, R&D organisations, medical hospitals, etc. DELNET is devoted to the Modernisation & Networking of Libraries. It was registered as a Society on June 20, 1992. It is located in Jawahar Lal Nehru University Campus, New Delhi. "Networking Libraries, Sharing and Spreading Knowledge" remains the prime objective of DELNET for which it is working tirelessly for past more than 30 years. DELNET has received the prestigious IPA Award for Excellence in Public Services on October 30, 2020 announced in the gracious presence of the Hon'ble former Vice President of India Shri M. Venkaiah Naidu.

The main objectives of DELNET is to promote resource sharing among the Member-Libraries by collecting, storing and disseminating information and by offering networked library services to users, to undertake research in the area of information science and technology, offer technical guidance to Member-Libraries, coordinate efforts for suitable collection development, facilitate and promote Inter Library Loan and delivery of documents, etc. DELNET has developed Discovery Portal, Knowledge Gateway Portal and Vision Portal (Video Lectures). The portals have sophisticated features for advance knowledge discovery. It is a simple, single window discovery layer which encourages the users to explore the networked library/knowledge resources offered through DELNET in a feature-rich environment. DELNET is a great boon for faculty researchers, scholars, students, etc. of Member Institutions. The testimonials received from eminent personalities and Member Institutions can be viewed at [www.delnet.in/testimonials.html](http://www.delnet.in/testimonials.html)

## THE RESOURCES

### 1. Union Catalogues and Databases

DELNET offers access to more than three crore and seventy five lakh records of books, periodicals, articles, theses and dissertations, video-recordings, sound-recordings and other databases. These are accessible worldwide through the DELNET online services. Any registered user of DELNET can search these databases through their allotted login and password and through the IP range.

#### a. Union Catalogue of Books

DELNET maintains an online union catalogue of books available with its Member-Libraries. The union catalogue is continuously updated and is growing in size. It can be accessed by Author title, subject, conference, series, etc. and also Boolean Operators can be used. It contains about 1,71,1,140 bibliographic records at present. Inter-library loan requests for books are placed online. Requests are also received through e-mail.

#### b. Union List of Current Periodicals

DELNET has created union list of current periodicals in science and technology, social sciences and humanities. This database is available online. It lists 1,09,240 titles of periodicals, both nationalized/international and is regularly

updated. It is a major source for Document Delivery Service for articles.

#### c. Union Catalogue of Periodicals

DELNET maintains a union catalogue of periodicals, which, besides bibliographic details, contains full fledged data of the periodicals. At present, the database contains 20,000 records.

#### d. Database of Periodical Articles

The database offers bibliographic details of articles which can be searched under title, author, compiler, etc. of the periodical and subject. The database is updated on time to time. It is extensively used by the researchers, scholars. At present the database contains 11,29,270 records. Also, articles not listed in this database are also available on the requests of Member-Libraries.

#### e. CD-ROM Database

A unique list of CD-ROMs available with the Member-Libraries is also offered to users. It has 63,140 records.

#### f. Union List of Video Recordings

The Union list of video recordings available with Member-Libraries has about 6,000 records.

#### g. Union List of Sound Recordings

This union list consists of sound recording available with Member-Libraries. This database have 1,025 records.

#### h. Theses and Dissertations

The Union List of Theses and Dissertations available with the Indian Universities covering various disciplines is also offered to users. This database has 1,29,940 records. Additionally a number of e-theses can be accessed and downloaded.

#### i. Profile of Member-Libraries

A directory of member libraries is made available for reference purpose.

#### 2. Knowledge Gateway Portal

DELNET is pleased to announce the launch of Knowledge Gateway Portal providing access to nearly 16 crore of text, E-books, E-journals, E-articles, IRs on varied subjects. The number of resources is growing every day. It is accessible through DELNET Discovery Portal to the member libraries. Kindly access it through [www.delnet.in](http://www.delnet.in)

#### 3. VISION Portal (Video Lectures)

DELNET has launched a new portal "VISION" (Video Lectures) which contain a large number of enriching videos, lectures delivered by the Subject Matter Experts (SMEs) from all fields of knowledge and hosted & accessible through a single platform. The single window interactive, timely and engaging platform allows the faculty, students, researchers and scholars, etc. to access the video lectures through the Subject, Speaker's name, Host Institution, etc. It will enable the students learning experience and will inspire innovation and critical thinking besides providing an opportunity to them for self-directed learning through the explanatory and descriptive lectures. DELNET is devoted to strengthening the knowledge sharing activities among the Member Institutions. As a large number of domain / subject matter experts are

connected with the DELNET Member Institutions as teaching faculty/visiting guest faculty, DELNET is keen to tap the vast intellectual faculty knowledge and to create a Knowledge Repository of Subject Matter Experts (SMEs). It will open up new vistas for knowledge collaborations among the member institutions. It will also lead to establishing new connections between the faculty and students for enhancing academic & research activities. The accumulation building also enable the institutions to take part in initiatives for creation and transfer of knowledge.

#### 4. DELNET also Provides Access to Full-Text E-journals in following Subjects:

(a) Aerospace Sciences	(m) Library and Information Technology
(b) Agriculture & Horticulture	(n) Management
(c) Architecture	(o) Mass Media
(d) Arts, Commerce and Science	(p) Medical
(e) Ayurveda	(q) Nursing
(f) Dental	(r) Paramedical
(g) Education	(s) Pharmacy
(h) Engineering and Technology	(t) Physiotherapy
(i) Fashion Technology	(u) Social & Entrepreneurship
(j) Homeopathy	(v) Social Science
(k) Hotel Management	(w) Yoga
(l) Law	

#### 5. DELNET Library Automation Software - Free of Cost to Members

DELNET offers software solutions to libraries for library management and inter connecting packages. These software are based on MARC 21, AACR-II and LCRI standards. DELNET software products are created to enable libraries to automate their libraries. These software perform necessary and sufficient operations. DELNET provides DELPLUS Software free of charge to the member libraries for Library Automation purposes. It has Acquisition, Cataloguing, Circulation, OPAC, Report Generation modules and can also be integrated with Bar Code solutions. Those member libraries that are interested in using DELNET software products are advised to get in touch with us.

#### 6. DELNET DELIBROSS Portal for Schools

DELNET has recently launched DELIBROSS portal for Schools. It contains vast resources of significance to students and teachers.

## THE SERVICES

### 1. Access to Union Catalogues and

DELNET offers online access to its union catalogues listed above. These union catalogues and databases are updated on a regular basis and to grow in size.

### 2. Interlibrary Loan and Document Delivery Services

DELNET offers Inter Library Loan and Document Delivery Services to its Member Libraries. All requests can be registered online for loans. For the resources not available in the union catalogue and periodical articles, document requests can be sent to DELNET through E-mail. The ILL/DOS services are quite popular among the member libraries in and outside India.

### 3. DELNET Conventions for E-journals

DELNET has a convention of E-journals in the field of Engineering, Technology, Management, Pharmacy, Medical Science, etc. The E-journals packages of Core Course Learning and Progress are also available for subscriptions. The details are available at [www.delnet.in](http://www.delnet.in)

### 4. Retro-Conversion

DELNET undertakes retro-conversion projects selectively.

### 5. Reference Services

DELNET maintains a referral centre which provides reference facilities to member libraries.

### 6. Training Programmes (Workshops, Lectures, Webinars)

DELNET arranges tutorials, workshops, seminars and training programmes from time to time. DELNET is also organizing Webinars with a delivery platform. The details about the forthcoming programmes are available at [www.delnet.in/programmes.htm](http://www.delnet.in/programmes.htm)

### 7. National Conventions on Knowledge Gateway and Information Network (DELNET)

The 26<sup>th</sup> National Convention on Knowledge Gateway and Information Network (DELNET) was held on 15-16 July, 2020 by DELNET at New Delhi.

The details are available at

### 8. DELNET E-News

DELNET offers e-news to its member libraries about the activities and facilities of DELNET. The details are also available at [www.delnet.in](http://www.delnet.in)

### 9. Test

DELNET offers test services to its member libraries. The details are available at [www.delnet.in](http://www.delnet.in)

### 10. Technical Support

DELNET offers technical support to its member libraries for installing, upgrading, and maintaining the software. The details are available at [www.delnet.in](http://www.delnet.in)





# SOUL 2.0

User Manual



**Information and Library Network Centre**  
(An Autonomous Inter-University Centre of U G C)







# SOUL 2.0

## User Manual



**Information and Library Network Centre**

(An Autonomous Inter-University Centre of UGC)

# I • N • D • E • X

About SOUL	ii
Installation Procedure	viii
Configuring operating system for Unicode-based Indic Script Support	xiii
Database Backup / Restore	xv
Upgrade procedure for Existing Users And Data Transfer	xvii

## 1 Administration

1.1 User Settings	2
1.1.1 Group	2
1.1.2 User	2
1.1.3 Password	3
1.2 System Settings	4
1.2.1 Email Settings	4
1.2.2 Image Modification	4
1.2.3 Letter Layout	5
1.2.4 Label Settings	6
1.2.5 Auto Letter Number Generation	6
1.2.6 Collection Type	7
1.2.7 Connection Settings	8
1.3 Acquisition Master	9
1.3.1 Vendor Management	9
1.3.2 Vendor Report	10
1.4 Catalogue Master	11
1.4.1 Leader	12
1.4.2 Fixed Field	14
1.4.3 Classification Scheme	15
1.4.4 Data entry Template	15
1.4.5 Report Template	17
1.4.6 Global Search and Replace	18
1.4.7 Delete Bibliographic Record(s)	18



# I • N • D • E • X

1.5	Circulation Master	19
1.5.1	Category	19
1.5.2	Calendar	23
1.5.3	Member Typed	24
1.5.4	Customise Member Card	24
1.5.5	Reset Transaction	26
1.5.6	Circulation Master Report	26
1.6	Serials Master	26
1.6.1	Vendor	27
1.6.2	Frequency	27
1.6.3	Delivery Mode	28
1.6.4	Binding Type	28
1.6.5	Edition	29
1.6.6	Serial Master Reports	29
1.6.6.1	Vendor Report	30
1.6.6.2	Frequency Report	30
1.6.6.3	Delivery Report	30
1.7	General Master	31
1.7.1	Currency	32
1.7.2	Budget	33
1.7.3	Budget Transfer	36
1.7.4	Institute Detail	37
1.7.5	Country Master	40
1.7.6	Language Master	41
1.7.7	Subject Master	41
1.7.8	Physical Media Master	43
1.7.9	New Library	43
1.7.10	General Master Reports	45

## 2 Acquisition

2.1	Suggestion	47
2.1.1	New Request	47
2.1.2	Gratis Items	49



# I • N • D • E • X

2.1.3	Select for Approval	49
2.1.4	Approval Process	50
2.1.5	Direct Approval	51
2.1.6	Export & Delete Rejected Item	51
2.1.7	Letter of Approval	52
2.1.8	Request Listing	52
<b>2.2</b>	<b>Orders</b>	<b>53</b>
2.2.1	New Order	53
2.2.2	Cancel Order	55
2.2.3	Direct Order	55
2.2.4	Purchase Order	57
2.2.5	Reminder Letter	57
2.2.6	Order Report	57
<b>2.3</b>	<b>Accessioning</b>	<b>58</b>
2.3.1	Receive Order	58
2.3.2	Accessioning of Items	59
2.3.3	Accessioning Report	62
2.3.4	Barcode	62
<b>2.4</b>	<b>Payment</b>	<b>62</b>
2.4.1	Invoice Process	63
2.4.2	Payment Process	65
2.4.3	Payment Settlement	66
2.4.4	Refund Process	67
2.4.5	Forwarding Letter of Account	68
2.4.6	Invoice Report	69
2.4.7	Payment Report	69
2.4.8	Refund Report	69
<b>3</b>	<b>Catalogue</b>	
<b>3.1</b>	<b>Cataloguing</b>	<b>70</b>
3.1.1	Title In-Process	72
3.1.2	Data Operation	73





# I • N • D • E • X

3.2	Import/Export	83
3.2.1	Import from MARC	83
3.2.2	Export to MARC	84
3.2.3	CCF to MARC	85
3.2.4	MARCXML to SOUL	86
3.2.5	Add Accession no to Imported Data	86
3.3	User Services	86
3.3.1	Current Awareness/Bibliographic Service	86
3.4	Reports	87
3.4.1	Basic	87
3.4.2	Advance	87
3.4.3	Spine Label	88
3.4.4	Book Card	88
4	Circulation	
4.1	Membership	90
4.1.1	New Member	90
4.1.2	Copy Member	92
4.1.3	Search Member	92
4.1.4	Delete Member	93
4.1.5	Renewal	94
4.1.6	No-Due Certificate	95
4.1.7	Member Card	95
4.1.8	Member Listing	95
4.2	Transaction	96
4.2.1	Transaction Menu	96
4.2.2	Search by Title	102
4.2.3	Overdue Charges	103
4.2.4	Book Bank Issue/Return	103
4.2.5	Reminder	104
4.2.6	Circulation Group	104
4.2.7	Stock Verification	105
4.2.8	Member Login	107



# I • N • D • E • X

4.2.9	Book Transfer	107
4.2.10	Items Issued Over a Period	108
4.2.11	Items Returned Over a Period	108
4.2.12	Items Reserved Over a Period	108
4.2.13	Overdue Item List	108
4.2.14	Fine Payers List	109
4.2.15	Pending Dues	109
4.2.16	Other Issues	109
4.2.17	Group Issue Report	109
4.2.18	Stock Verification	109
4.2.19	Member Log List	110
<b>4.3</b>	<b>ILL</b>	<b>110</b>
4.3.1	Borrowing Book	111
4.3.2	Lending Book	115
<b>4.4</b>	<b>Maintenance</b>	<b>117</b>
4.4.1	Lost	117
4.4.2	Binding	119
4.4.3	Damaged	121
4.4.4	Missing	122
4.4.5	Withdrawal	123
4.4.6	Status Report	123
4.4.7	Maintenance Report	123
<b>5</b>	<b>Serial Control</b>	
<b>5.1</b>	<b>Titles</b>	<b>125</b>
5.1.1	MARC 21 Entry Edit	125
5.1.2	Title Entry	127
5.1.3	Title Update	128
5.1.4	Article Indexing	129
5.1.5	Title Report	130
5.1.6	Title Holding Report	131



# I • N • D • E • X

5.2	Suggestions	131
5.2.1	New Request	131
5.2.2	Update Request	132
5.2.3	Select for Approval	133
5.2.4	Approval Process	133
5.2.5	Re-Approve Rejected	134
5.2.6	Merge into Database	134
5.2.7	Request Report	135
5.3	Subscription	136
5.3.1	New Order	136
5.3.2	Cancel Order	138
5.3.3	Purchase Order	138
5.3.4	Order Report	139
5.4	Payment	139
5.4.1	Invoice	140
5.4.2	Payment	141
5.4.3	Refund Process	142
5.4.4	Forwarding Letter to Account Section/Vendor	142
5.4.5	Invoice Report	143
5.4.6	Payment Report	143
5.4.7	Refund Report	143
5.5	Check in	143
5.5.1	Schedule Generation	144
5.5.2	Non-Received Process	145
5.5.3	Check in Details	146
5.5.4	Remove Received Issue	147
5.5.5	Reminder Letter	148
5.5.6	Check in Report	148
5.6	Commercial Binding/In House Binding	148
5.6.1	Set Preparation	149
5.6.2	Order Process	149
5.6.3	Receiving/Accessioning	150





# I • N • D • E • X

5.6.4	Invoice Process	151
5.6.5	Payment	152
5.6.6	Binding Reports	152
<b>6</b>	<b>OPAC</b>	<b>153</b>
6.1	Simple Search	154
6.2	Boolean Search	157
6.3	Advance Boolean	157
6.4	Member OPAC	158
	<b>APPENDIX</b>	<b>159</b>
	<b>Keyword Index</b>	<b>189</b>



## Important Details

SOUL CD Key

Activation Key

Month/Year of  
Purchase

Name of Institute





## About SOUL 2.0

Software for University Libraries (SOUL) is a state-of-the-art integrated library management software designed and developed by the INFLIBNET Centre based on requirements of college and university libraries. It is a user-friendly software developed to work under client-server environment. The software is compliant to international standards for bibliographic formats, networking and circulation protocols. After a comprehensive study, discussions and deliberations with the senior library professionals of the country, the software was designed to automate all housekeeping operations in a library. The software is suitable not only for the academic libraries, but also for all types and sizes of libraries, even school libraries. The first version of software i.e. SOUL 1.0 was released during CALIBER 2000. The database of the SOUL 1.0 was designed on MS-SQL and was compatible with MS SQL Server 7.0 or higher. The latest version of the software i.e. SOUL 2.0 has been designed for latest versions of MS-SQL and MySQL (or any other popular RDBMS). SOUL 2.0 is compliant to international standards such as MARC 21 bibliographic format, Unicode-based Universal Character Sets for multilingual bibliographic records and NCIP 2.0/ SIP2 based protocols for electronic surveillance and control.

## Major Features and Functions

**Major features and functionalities of SOUL 2.0 are as follows:**

- ❖ UNICODE-based multilingual support for Indian and foreign languages;
- ❖ Compliant to International Standards such as MARC21, AACR-2, MARCXML;
- ❖ Compliant to NCIP 2.0 and SIP2 protocol for RFID and other related applications especially for electronic surveillance and self check-out & check-in;



- ❖ Client-server based architecture, user-friendly interface that does not require extensive training;
- ❖ Supports multi-platform for bibliographic database such as My SQL, MS-SQL or any other RDBMS;
- ❖ Supports cataloguing of electronic resources such as e-journals, e-books, virtually any type of material;
- ❖ Supports requirements of digital library and facilitate link to full-text articles and other digital objects;
- ❖ Supports online copy cataloguing from MARC21 bibliographic database;
- ❖ Provides default templates for data entry of different type of documents. User can also customize their own data entry templates for different type of documents;
- ❖ Provides freedom to users for generating reports of their choice and format along with template and query parameters;
- ❖ Supports ground-level practical requirements of the libraries such as stock verification, book bank, vigorous maintenance functions, transaction level enhanced security, etc.;
- ❖ Provides facility to send reports through e-mail, allows users to save the reports in various formats such as PDF, Excel, MARCXML, etc.;
- ❖ Highly versatile and user-friendly OPAC with simple and advanced search. OPAC users can export their search results into PDF, MS Excel, and MARCXML format;
- ❖ Supports authority files of personal name and corporate body ;
- ❖ Supports data exchange through ISO-2709 standard;
- ❖ Update form Software as well as offline update;
- ❖ Global Search and replace
- ❖ Provides simple budgeting system and single window operation for all major circulation functions;
- ❖ Strong region-wise support for maintenance through regional coordinators. Strong online and offline support by e-mail, chat and through dedicated telephone line during office hours; and
- ❖ Available at an affordable cost with strong institutional support.

## Modules

The SOUL 2.0 consists of the following modules. Each module has further been divided into sub-modules to cater to its functional requirements:

- ❖ Acquisition
- ❖ Catalogue
- ❖ Circulation
- ❖ OPAC
- ❖ Serial Control
- ❖ Administration

The in-built network feature of the software will allow multiple libraries of the same university to function together as well as access to the distributed databases installed at university libraries and union catalogue mounted at INFLIBNET using VSAT network.

## Acquisition

The module enables library staff to handle all the major functions, such as

- ❖ Suggestions Management;
- ❖ Order Processing, Cancellation and Reminders;
- ❖ Receipt, Payment and Budgetary control;
- ❖ Master files such as Currency, Vendors, Publishers etc.; and
- ❖ Reports.

## Catalogue

Catalogue module is used for retrospective conversion of library resources. It also facilitates library staff to process of the newly acquired library resources. The strong features of catalogue module are:

- ❖ Allows cataloguer to create their own templates for data entry of different library resources;
- ❖ Different templates for leaders and fixed fields of MARC21;
- ❖ Allows user-generated customized reports;
- ❖ Facilitates authority database of person name, corporate body, subject headings and series name;
- ❖ Supports copy cataloguing in MARC21 format by using ISO-2709 standard;
- ❖ Master database of publishers;

### Circulation

This module takes care of all possible functions of circulation. Sufficient care has been taken in designing this module starting from membership management, maintenance and status of library items, transaction, ILL, overdue charges, renewals & reminders, search status and report generation according to the status of the items. The circulation module is fully compliant with the NISO Circulation and Interchange Protocol (NCIP) version 2.0 as well as SIP2 for electronic surveillance and RFID based transaction of the items. Major functions of the circulation modules are:

- ❖ Membership;
- ❖ Transaction;
- ❖ Inter-library loan;
- ❖ Overdue charges;
- ❖ Reminder;
- ❖ Search status;
- ❖ Maintenance of the items such as binding, lost, replace, missing, withdrawal, etc.; and
- ❖ Report generation based on the various requirements.

## On-line Public Access Catalogue (OPAC)

One of the major attractions of SOUL is its robust On-line Public Access Catalogue (OPAC). The OPAC has simple and advanced search facility with the minimum information for each item including author, title, corporate body, conference name, subject headings, keywords, class number, series name, accession number or combination of any of two or more information regarding the item. Major functions provided in the OPAC module are:

- ❖ Simple Search;
- ❖ Boolean Search;
- ❖ Advanced Boolean Search;
- ❖ Displaying and downloading of records in MS Excel, PDF or MARCXML; and
- ❖ Search support for the items that are in the acquisition process in the library.

## Serial Control

Managing serials is the most complicated job for a library. The module keeps track of serials in the library effectively and efficiently. The serial control module is developed based on the KARDEX system and the following functions built into it:

- ❖ Suggestions;
- ❖ Master databases;
- ❖ Subscriptions;
- ❖ Check-in of individual issues of journals;
- ❖ Payment, reminder, binding, and title history;
- ❖ Export / import by using ISO 2709 bibliographic exchange format;
- ❖ Article indexing of journal/book articles;
- ❖ Cataloguing of electronic journals; and
- ❖ keeps track of the history changes of the journals.

## Administration

In addition to the features available in the Administration Module of the SOUL 1.0, some more features have been added to the administration module of the SOUL 2.0 as per inputs from the various SOUL users and requirements of the library staff. The module has been divided into three major sub modules for accommodating the new features. These three sub-modules are User Management, System Parameters and Masters. The Administration Module provides the following:

- ❖ Grouping of users based on the policy;
- ❖ Transactional rights over the systems;
- ❖ Transaction level security to users;
- ❖ Various configuration settings such as labels, e-mail and other parameters related to the software use; and
- ❖ Common master databases being used in modules.





## Installation Procedure

### Pre-Requisites

#### Minimum Hardware Requirements

- ❖ Processor Type : PIV or Higher
- ❖ Processor Speed : 1 GHz or Higher
- ❖ RAM : Minimum 512 MB (1 GB Recommended)
- ❖ Free Hard Disk Space : 400 MB (Minimum)

#### Supported Operating System Platforms

Windows XP SP3 , Windows Vista , Windows 2003 Server, Windows 2008 Server (Latest Service Packs are always recommended)

#### Other Pre Requisites

- ❖ Windows Installer Version 3.1
- ❖ Dot Net framework Version 2.0
- ❖ Microsoft Data Access Components Version 2.8 (SP1)
- ❖ Microsoft Report Viewer 2005

To install all pre-requisites together please execute setup.exe from "PreReq" folder in your CD

## Installation

Installation of SOUL 2.0 has been divided into following three parts:

1. Database Installation
2. Application Installation
3. Utility Installation

### 1. Database Installation

SOUL 2.0 can be installed on multiple RDBMS platforms. Present version of software has been tested on Microsoft SQL Server 200x and MySQL 5.x.

Installation of database server is must before installing SOUL 2.0 application. The system on which you install RDBMS will become server for you that, installation can be done based on back-end database that you wish to use. Choose one of the following three options:

**Option I :** User does not have any RDBMS Installed

SOUL 2.0 is bundled with database engine which is based on Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Express. This database engine will be enough for libraries with smaller collection. This database engine can be installed by running setup.exe from “S20DBEN” folder of your CD. After setting it up, please follow the steps mentioned in option II.

**Note :** Set your server to listen TCP/IP by going in to Programs > Microsoft SQL Server > Configuration manger > Network Configuration > Protocols for MS SQL Server > TCP/IP Set to Enable.

**Option II :** User is having SQL Server 200x installed on server

As you have already installed database engine, now you need to create a new database and install default values, to do this, please run setup.exe from “S20DBCR” folder of your CD.

In this screen you will be prompted to enter Server Name, Database Name, Username, Password.

Enter following values:

Server Name	<Name of your system where Database Engine has been installed>
Database Name	< Name of the database where you want to store SOUL data>
User Name	< Enter 'sa' if you have not created any user>
Password	< Keep 'soul20' in case of default installation or replace with your password>

Proceed further by pressing next button. Your database will be created which you can use to refer in your ODBC Settings.

Now you will be required to create an ODBC entry pointing to your database. Please refer section “Creating ODBC entry” for more help.

**Option III:** User is having MySQL [or any other RDBMS]

If you wish to use any other RDBMS for database, create a new Database by any name, and execute the script provided in “Scripts” folder from CD.

Create an ODBC entry pointing to your database. Please refer section “Creating ODBC entry” for more help.

## 2. Application Installation

### A. SOUL 2.0 Server Installation

SOUL server utility is required for authentication of your package; SOUL Software Application will not run without installing this package. To install this utility, please run setup.exe from S20SERV” folder from your CD.

Here you will be prompted to enter your ID Key given by INFLIBNET Centre, then click on “next” button to complete installation. Once Installation is complete Soul Server application will start automatically. To activate product click on “Generate Handshake Key” button, Which will give you a unique handshake key. By supplying this key to INFLIBNET Centre you will get an activation key in return. Enter that key into your Soul Server Application & click on “Activate Product” to activate your Soul application. After entering activation key, one can start using product.

Note: You will be allowed to work for 7 days without activation.

### B. SOUL 2.0 Application Installation

SOUL 2.0 application can be installed by clicking setup.exe from “S20APP” folder.

After installation, while executing you will be asked to choose database through ODBC.

### 3. Creating ODBC Entry

- ❖ Go to control panel
- ❖ Open “Administrative Tools”
- ❖ Open “Data Sources (ODBC)”
- ❖ Select “User DSN” Tab, click on add button
- ❖ You will be asked to choose your database driver, here make a selection as per your database server type as explained in above cases (In case of default install choose “SQL server”)
- ❖ Enter your ODBC name, and name of your server and click “next”
- ❖ Choose authentication type ( For option I it will be SQL Server authentication)
- ❖ Enter Login Name and Password (For option I it will 'sa' and 'soul20' )
- ❖ You will be prompted to choose name of your database, please enter the name of database that have created.

### 4. Running the Application First Time

When you will run the SOUL 2.0 application for the first time, you will be prompted to enter DSN (Data Source Name), Here you have to choose the ODBC entry which you have created in earlier step. This will enable your application to connect to the database. You will also be prompted to enter IP address of the machine where 'SOUL Server' application has been installed, please enter IP Address in proper format.

### 5. Installing Data Transfer Utility

This utility has been exclusively made for users who are changing from their earlier edition of SOUL to SOUL 2.0, To get this utility installed please execute setup.exe from “S20DBTR” folder. One can execute

this utility by going into programs > INFLIBNET Center > SOUL Data Transfer

### 6. Installing Web OPAC

**Note:** Before installing WebOPAC please check that IIS 6 or higher has been enabled in your system, for enabling IIS, please refer to your Operating System documentation.

To have WebOPAC installed in your server please execute setup.exe from “S20WEB” folder. There are instances that some of IIS configuration may not allow direct installation of WebOPAC due to authentication issues. In such cases, please copy entire 'WebOPAC' folder to your IIS's web root, create an application using IIS Administration.

The next step is to edit 'web.config' file which is available in 'WebOPAC' folder, please look for the following lines and feed-in the values which are marked as bold:

```
<addkey="ConnectionString" value="DSN=<YOURDSN>;UID=<YOURSQLUSERID>;PWD=<YOURSQLPASSWORD>;DATABASE=<YOUR SOUL DATABASE>;"/>
```

Please note that for security reasons it is recommended to create a separate 'System DSN' as explained in “Creating ODBC” section and assign different user name and password to your SOUL database.

### 7. Installing NCIP 2.0 Server

To Install NCIP 2.0 Server please execute setup.exe from “S20NCIP” folder

### 8. Installing SIP 2 Server

To install SIP 2.0 Server please execute setup.exe from “S20SIP” folder





### Configuring your operating system for Unicode-based Indic Script Support

SOUL 2.0 supports entry in almost all Unicode-based languages. However, to work with Indian languages Indic support must be enabled in your operating system. Following are the steps given below for enabling Indic support for your operating systems;

#### Windows XP and Server 2003

##### Configuring Indic text

- a. Install at least one Unicode font in your system, associated with the language that you want to view correctly, or install a Unicode font which contains large character set for many different languages.
- b. Go to Start > Control Panel.
- c. If you are in "Category View", select the icon that says "Date, Time, Language and Regional Options" and then select "Regional and Language Options".
- d. If you are in "Classic View", select the icon that says "Regional and Language Options".
- e. Select the "Languages" tab and make sure you select the option saying "Install files for complex script and right-to-left languages (including Thai)". A confirmation message should now appear - press "OK" on this confirmation message.
- f. Allow the OS to install necessary files from the Windows XP CD and then reboot, if prompted.

##### Inputting Indic text

Windows XP has inbuilt InScript Keyboards for nearly all Indian languages. You can add them via Control Panel. You must follow the steps above before you perform the remaining steps.

- a. In the "Regional and Language Options", click the "Languages" tab.
- b. Click on the "Details" tab.
- c. Click the "Add" button to add a keyboard for your particular language.
- d. In the drop-down box, select your required Indian language.
- e. Make sure the check box labelled "Keyboard layout/IME" is selected and ensure you select an appropriate keyboard.
- f. Now select "OK" to save changes.

You can use the combination ALT + SHIFT to switch between different keyboard layouts (e.g. from a UK Keyboard to Gujarati and vice-versa). If you want a language bar, you can select it by pressing the "Language Bar..." button on the "Text Services and Input Languages" dialog and then selecting "Show the language bar on my desktop". The language bar enables you to visually select the keyboard layout you are using.

For the people who are not able to use the above InScript Keyboard, there are some other Keyboard Drivers available. For Phonetic typing BarahaIME (<http://www.baraha.com>) is suggested and for Remington typing IndicIME (<http://www.bhashaindia.com>) is suggested.

Indic IME 1 (v5.x) is available from Microsoft Bhasha India portal. This supports Hindi Scripts, Gujarati, Kannada and Tamil. Indic IME 1 gives the user a choice between a number of keyboards including Phonetic, InScript and Remington.

### Windows Vista

#### Viewing Indic text

You do not need to do anything to enable viewing of Indic text.

#### Inputting Indic text

Windows Vista, like Windows XP, has inbuilt InScript keyboards for nearly all Indian languages. You can add them via the Control Panel.

- a. Go to Start > Control Panel
- b. If you are in normal view, select Change keyboards or other input methods from under Clock, Language and Region.
- c. If you are in Classic view, select Regional and Language Options.
- d. Select the Keyboards and Languages tab if it is not already selected.
- e. Select the Change keyboards... button.
- f. Choose you desired language(s) from the list and expand them using the '+' sign. Then, expand the item which says Keyboard and tick your preferred keyboard layout(s).
- g. Select OK, and OK again to save the changes.

The hot key combination for switching between languages is Left Alt+Shift.

For Phonetic typing, BarahaIME and for Remington typing, IndicIME is suggested.



### Database Backup / Restore Utility

This utility is available in 'DBBack' folder of CD supplied to you. It has been exclusively made for those users who are using Database Engine supplied along with SOUL 2.0 software.

This utility can be used for taking backup from SQL Server and to restore it in the same or another SQL server. It must be installed in the system where SQL Server is installed.

This utility facilitate user to perform backup/restore operation in the following two ways:

#### A. Create backup file (.BAK) and restore

This option can be used for regular backup operations, You are requested to take backup more frequently if number of transactions are more.

## B. Detach .MDF/ .LDF file and attach it to restore

This option needs to be exercised with utmost care, as it completely detaches database file from SQL server. This option is useful in following cases:

- ❖ If you are changing your server from one machine to another machine
- ❖ If you are upgrading from SOUL 1.x to SOUL 2.0 on same machine or another machine
- ❖ If you are re-installing the software.



To take backup/detach database file perform following steps:

- ❖ Give Server Name, Username and Password for SQL and press “Connect”.
- ❖ After getting 'connection successful' message select the database name from the dropdown menu of which you want to take backup
- ❖ Select export path using “Browse” button. (It is advisable to give SQL Server data path in case of Detach MDF file)
- ❖ Press “Detach & Export (MDF)” or “Backup” (In case of Backup, it will ask for the new backup file name)

To restore/attach the database performs following steps:

- ❖ Select the .MDF file path or .BAK file path from the “Browse” button

- ❖ Give the new database you want to restore as.
- ❖ Press “Import & Attach (.MDF)” or “Restore”

Note: In case of detach file backup it will detach the old database from the server, while in backup operation the old database will remain as it is.



### Upgrade Procedure for Existing Users

Follow these procedures if you are having Network Version of SOUL 1.x. It is also recommended to take backup of existing system, before attempting installation of new version.

It is recommended to install SOUL 2.0 in new system (so for time being you can have both the system working in parallel).

After you have installed SOUL 2.0 in newer system, please take backup of your old database (which is available in MS SQL 200x) using backup/restore utility supplied, and restore the database on new system. Now your new system will be having two simultaneous database running over the system one will be of your old SOUL which will be having all the data and another will be of new SOUL 2.0 which is blank, execute data transfer utility for conversion from old database to newly created database.

In case if you want to install SOUL 2.0 in same system where you have installed SOUL 1.x, do not attempt to install database engine as you are already having SOUL database engine.

It is assumed that you have MS SQL Server 200x, therefore, you only need to create a new database(as explained in installation section) in your existing database engine and execute data transfer utility.

However continuing using SOUL 2.0 on MSDE 2000 platform is not being recommended, it is advisable to migrate to SQL Express 2005 or higher as soon as possible.



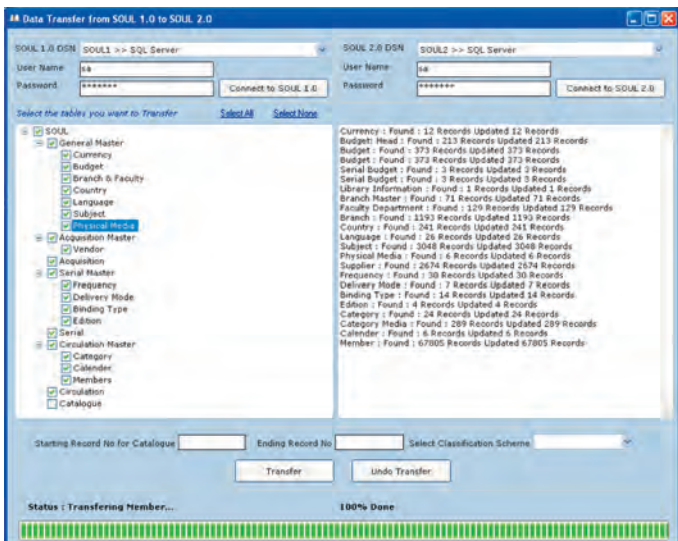
## Data Transfer Utility

Data Transfer Utility is only required for those users who are using SOUL 1.0 and want to transfer their data to SOUL 2.0

SOUL 1.0 user can transfer whole database or part of their database as per their requirement

To transfer SOUL 1.0 data to SOUL 2.0 user should follow the below mentioned steps:

1. Create DSN to connect SOUL 1.0 Database
2. Create DSN to connect SOUL 2.0 Database
3. Select SOUL 1.0 DSN, give User Name and Password press “Connect to SOUL 1.0” button
4. Follow the same procedure to connect SOUL 2.0 DSN
5. Select the modules you want to transfer from SOUL1.0 Database as shown in figure.



6. To transfer Catalogue records user have to mention Starting Record No, Ending Record No and Classification Scheme.
7. Press “Transfer” button.

It is advisable to transfer the data module wise (i.e. first of all choose General Master, transfer all the data, then choose Acquisition master and so on) rather than transfer it in to one click.

It is also advisable to transfer catalogue data in a bunch of 1000 records (i.e. 1 to 1000, then 1001 to 2000 and so on) to increase execution speed.





## 1.0 Administration



SOUL or any Library Management Software will work efficiently only if parameters (rules) for each operation are set before we start using it Live. These parameters are stored in the Set-up pages and can be accessed by selecting “Administration”. We must define rules (i.e. information on Vendors List, Budgets, Types of Resources, User Categories, Allocation of Accession Nos.etc), to configure the Software. Once these Rules for various processes are fed in the LMS (Library Management Software), it will function smoothly without any obstacles. Therefore, we will first set-up the requisite parameters by using options available from Administration Module.

Consult INFLIBNET SOUL Support Cell to understand the elements mentioned here and refer to Glossary at the end of the Manual. Here we can set rules and feed standard information needed for our LMS.

Select Administration from the menu which, in turn, provides following options:

- |    |                    |    |                  |
|----|--------------------|----|------------------|
| 1] | User Settings      | 2] | System Settings  |
| 3] | Acquisition Master | 4] | Catalogue Master |
| 5] | Circulation Master | 6] | Serial Master    |
| 7] | General Master     |    |                  |



## 1.1 User Settings

We can create new users of the SOUL software through this option. Requisite rights can be granted for each type of user. Please be ready with names of the users, password, module rights to be assigned to each type of user etc. You can also create a “Group of Users” to assign common rights to that Group.

### 1.1.1 Group

It is recommended to create user group first, i.e. circulation user can be given only circulation rights. Please keep information on library administration groups ready before the rights are allocated e.g. circulation desk staff, books processing staff, serials control staff, IT Administrators (back-ups, system settings etc) and the modules to which you would like to assign rights to each of these Groups.

**Group Entry Form**

Group Privileges

Group Name: SuperUser

Select All  Acquisition  Catalogue  Circulation  Serial Control  Administration

Privilege Name

- Acquisition > New Request
- Acquisition > Gratic Item
- Acquisition > Select for Approval
- Acquisition > Approval Process
- Acquisition > Direct Approval
- Acquisition > Export & Delete Rejected
- Acquisition > Order
- Acquisition > Cancel Order
- Acquisition > Direct Order
- Acquisition > Purchase Order
- Acquisition > Receive Order
- Acquisition > Accessioning
- Acquisition > Invoice
- Acquisition > Payment
- Acquisition > Refund Process
- Acquisition > Reports
- Catalogue > Cataloging > Title In Process
- Catalogue > Cataloging > Data Operation
- Catalogue > Cataloging > Data Operation Authority
- Catalogue > ImportExport > Import from MARC
- Catalogue > ImportExport > Export to MARC
- Catalogue > ImportExport > OLD SOUL to NEW SOUL
- Catalogue > ImportExport > CCF to MARC

New Update Save Delete Exit

### 1.1.2 User

After creating groups please create individual library system user pertaining to different groups. Rights assigned to that group will be automatically reflected to the newly created user.

If user is created for “Main Library” he/she will be allowed to do transactions only for that library, where as in case of “All Libraries” he/she will be allowed to do transactions from all libraries.

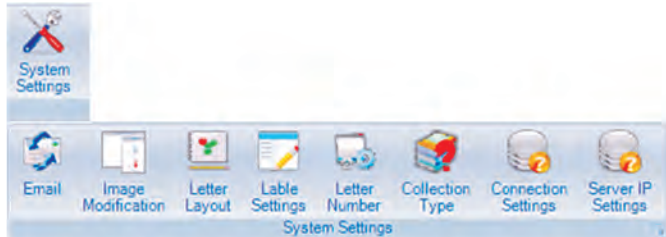
### 1.1.3 Password

Password for each user or a group can be changed through this option.

Password change is allowed only when old password is entered and secret question is answered correctly. It is also being requested to change “Superuser” password by change password option in above screen.



## 1.2 System Settings



### 1.2.1 Email Settings

Email settings allows to set-up an e-mail account from where the e-mails will be sent to the Users, Vendors or Institutions/Departments. This also allows to set-up masters for different types of letters, like standard reminder, letters to vendor, members etc.

Please consult your system administration for e-mail parameters/ configuration.

**E-mail Configuration**

E-mail Configuration

Domain Name

SMTP Server

Authorized E-Mail ID

User Name

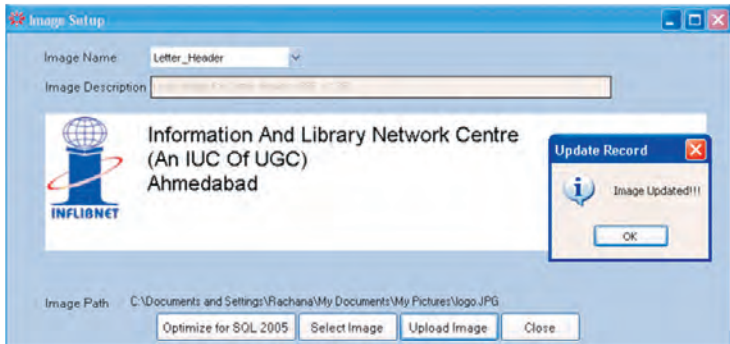
Password

OK Close

### 1.2.2 Image Setup/ Modification

You will be able to insert Institute's Logo or standard header image which will be used for any outgoing communication like Letter heads,

Membership Cards etc. The image can be selected using this option. Image uploaded through this option will be available as letter head and member card logo. If one wants to print letters on pre-printed stationary or if you don't want default image printed please select a blank picture with white background.



### 1.2.3 Letter Layout

The following standard letters are available for use. You can also modify its text if needed, these letters will appear with Standard Header logo image uploaded using earlier option.

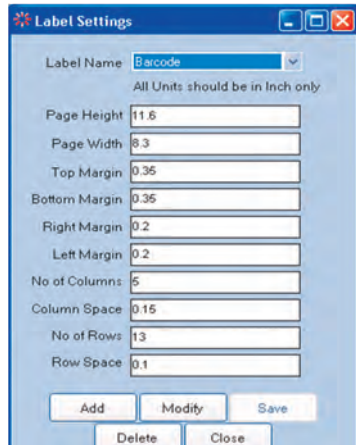
You will have options to modify following letters.

Letter for Approval
<b>Letter for Approval</b>
Cancellation of Order
Cancellation of Remiinder
Forwarding letter to Account Section for Serial Control Module
Fowarding Letter to Account Section of Serials
Fowarding Letter to Account Section of Books
Forwarding Letter to Vendor intimating Payment
ILL Arrival Intimation Notice

### 1.2.4 Label Settings

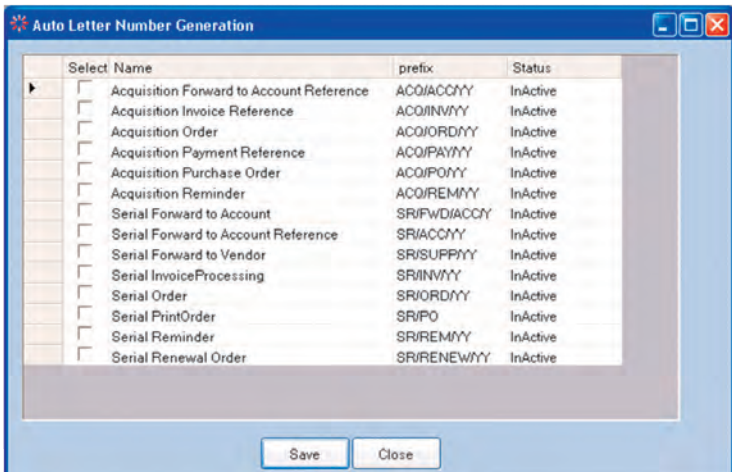
You can design a template for the standard stationery labels – e.g. address-labels, barcode labels, spine labels of requisite size.

There are pre-defined standard settings for Barcode, Book Card, Spine Label etc. You can also add new sizes as per your requirement and save them for future use.



### 1.2.5 Auto Letter Number Generation

This option will allow you to set standard reference, which should appear before dis patch sr.no. (e.g. INFLIB/ABD/ACQ/0809/781) in each type of standard communication you will be sending from the system. Set the reference code in this form.



In label settings only those labels which are having status as active will be displayed in letters and other communications, apart from any string, following interpretation will be taken for auto number generation, it will also append numeric sequence number after the prefix you have specified.

DD – Date (Numeric)

DDD- First Three Character of the day (i.e. MON,TUE...)

DDDD – Full Day Name (i.e. Monday, Tuesday ...)

MM – Month (Numeric)

MMM – First three characters of month (i.e JAN,FEB....)

MMMM – Full Month Name (i.e. January, February ....)

YY – Year (Numeric)

YYYY – Year (Numeric Four Digits)

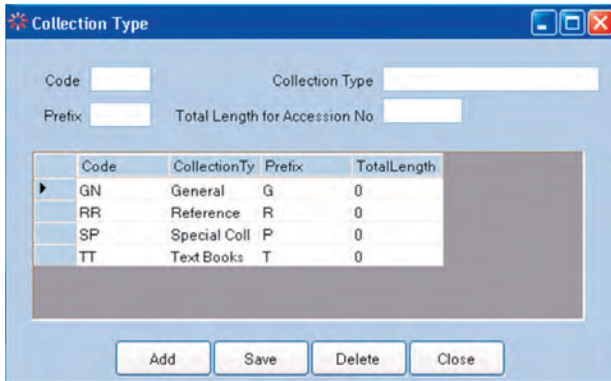
### **1.2.6 Collection Type**

Type of collections a library has includes Lending, Reference, Special Collection, Textbooks, Junior Books, DVDs etc.

The prefix selected for collection code will automatically appear before the accession number to separate the collection from each other in case of auto generation of accession number in acquisition. Defining collection type is also useful in case of membership category privileges while enabling “On-Premises” and “Overnight Issue” and number of reservations allowed for that category.

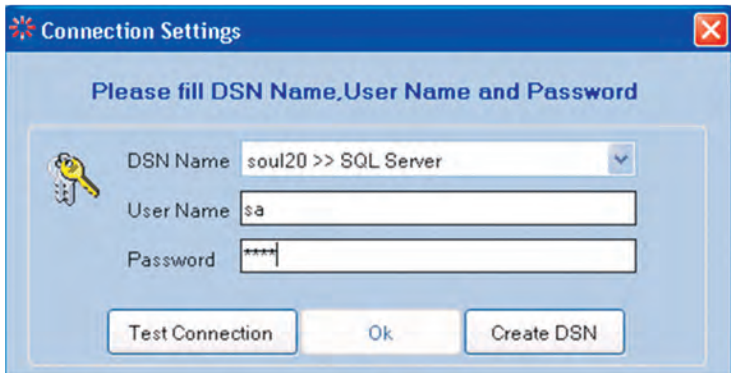
This is one-time information. Once we start processing the resources under each collection, changing the prefix/collection code will affect

stability of the system, please ensure you have given proper thought before assigning the codes and prefix alphabets to specific type of collection.



### 1.2.7 Connection Settings

SOUL application needs to get connected with database server, Using this option one can specify the connection settings. This option is applicable only if you have multiple SOUL databases, you will have to restart your application after changing the connection to have effect of new database connection.



## 1.3 Acquisition Master



### 1.3.1 Vendor Management

Vendors are the resources suppliers to the Library. Resources (stock) like Books, multi-media CDs, e-books, on-line databases are purchased by the library from these vendors. Vendor Management allows to store information about the vendors with whom the library deals frequently. The categorisation (Vendor Status) of each vendor is necessary. Providing master information will facilitate us to send letters, orders, reminders, emails etc to them. Vendors main categories are :

 A screenshot of the 'Vendor Management' application window. The window title is 'Vendor Management' and it has standard Windows window controls. The form contains the following fields:
 

- Vendor Name:** A.P.H. Publishing Corporation
- Vendor Code:** 8,004
- Specialization:** (empty)
- Vendor Status:** Publisher (dropdown menu)
- Address:** 5, Ansari Road, Dary a Ganj
- City:** Delhi
- PIN:** 110002
- State:** New Delhi
- Country:** INDIA
- Contact Details:**
  - Contact Person:** (empty)
  - Designation:** (empty)
  - E-mail:** aph@mantraonline.com
  - Phone:** 3274050
  - Fax:** (empty)
  - Telex:** (empty)

 At the bottom of the form, there are buttons for 'View Report', 'Add', 'Delete', 'Browse', 'Save', and 'Close'. On the right side of the form, there are radio buttons for 'Inactive' and 'Active', with 'Active' selected.

Supplier: The details of the Supplier (who is not a publisher) are stored here. Publisher: The details of the Publisher (who is not a supplier) are stored here.

Supplier-Publisher: The details of the Publisher who is also a Supplier are stored here. Blacklisted: The Supplier/Publisher/Binder are blacklisted due to various reasons are recorded here. Please do not delete the records of such parties - just categorise them as 'Blacklisted'. This will avoid any future transactions with these vendors. Binder: Choose the appropriate category (Vendor Status) when you are creating records for 'Binders' with whom Library deals with frequently.

You can always add new records to the vendors list. System will automatically assign unique identification Code for each vendor based on their status.

### To Edit Vendors Details or Delete Records

Select 'Browse' from the bottom menu-bar. It will allow you to browse all the vendors, click on the desired vendor from the list and modify or delete record (if needed) and press 'Save' button.



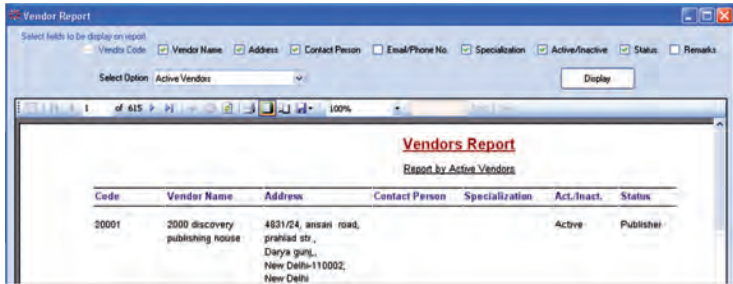
The screenshot shows a window titled "Browse Vendors" with search fields for "Code" and "Name", and "Search" and "Close" buttons. Below is a table of vendor records:

Vendor C	Name	City	Country	Phone	Email	Active
A.001	A. P. H. Publishing Corpor		INDIA			Y
A.003	A.A.Balkema	Netherlands	NETHERLANDS			Y
A.002	A.B.S.ublications	Panjab	INDIA	221104		Y
A.004	A.P.H. Publishing Corpora	Delhi	INDIA	327405	aph@mantraonline.c	Y
AA001	Aavishkar Publishers, Dist	Rajasthan	INDIA			Y
AB001	ABD Publishers	Rajastan	INDIA			Y

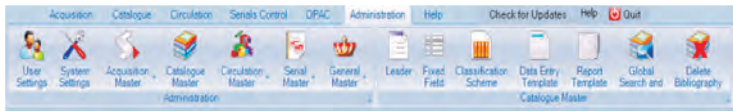
### 1.3.2 Vendor Report

Selecting this option under 'General Master' can generate complete List of vendors. You can apply various combinations for display and search for the vendors by ticking the appropriate box(s) and selecting option from the drop-down menu.

If more number of fields are selected for display, it will be desirable to have the report in landscape, to have this, please choose landscape mode from page setup of report viewer.



## 1.4 Catalogue Master



SOUL uses the MARC format. Catalogue Administration needs knowledge of MARC standard and a bit of understanding how records are identified when they are searched for any purpose. Please refer to Appendix on MARC for understanding its mechanism.

Please DO NOT make any changes in the templates or values against any field, unless you are confident of the changes you are making.

Values against each tag in the templates under Catalogue Master take care of identifying the records, separating or grouping them when the user (including staff) seeks any information from the system. These templates will be ready with values needed in a standard library practices. Please ensure you are familiar with the values against each tag in these templates.



### 1.4.1 Leader

MARC records can be distinguished for various types of material by the specific codes used in Leader/06 (Type of Record) . The leader of a MARC record identifies number of bibliographic record types including following.

? Language material	? Non- musical sound recording
? Manuscript language material	? Musical sound recording
? Computer file	? Projected medium
? Cartographic material	? Two dimensional non - projectable graphic
? Manuscript cartographic material	? Three dimensional artefact or natural objects
? Notated music	? Kit
? Manuscript music	? Mixed material

### MARC21 Tag Groups

Tag Group	Function
0xx	Bibliographic control numbers and coded information
1xx	Main entries
2xx	Titles, edition and imprint information, etc.
3xx	Physical description, etc.
4xx	Series statements
5xx	Notes
6xx	Subject access entries
7xx	Added entries other than subject or series and linking fields
8xx	Series added entries and holdings
9xx	Local use fields

It would be easier to understand structure of MARC format from the above broad Tag Groups. Each Tag Group has three characters followed by sub-field tags.

The leader is the first 24 characters of the record. Each position has an assigned meaning, but much of the information in the leader is for computer use. MARC record creation and editing programs usually provide a window or prompts to assist the cataloguer in filling in any leader data elements that require input. However, you can create different set of Leader for different record types.

Here you have option to create your own leader, To do that please choose the appropriate leader, modify its values and save it using “SaveAs” option.

These Leader templates can be used while creating bibliographic records.

Catalogue -> Administration -> Leader Templates

Book | nam a22 4a 4500

Record Status [05]	new	n
Type of Record [06]	language material	a
Bibliographic Level [07]	monograph/item	m
Type of Control [08]	no specified type	
Char. Coding Scheme [09]	UCS/Unicode	a
Encoding Level [17]	core level	4
Descriptive Cataloging form [18]	AACR-2	a
Linked Record Requi. [19]	Related record not requir	

Save Save As Delete Close

### 1.4.2 Fixed Field (008)

A MARC record has one Fixed Field composed of the 008 field and Leader information.

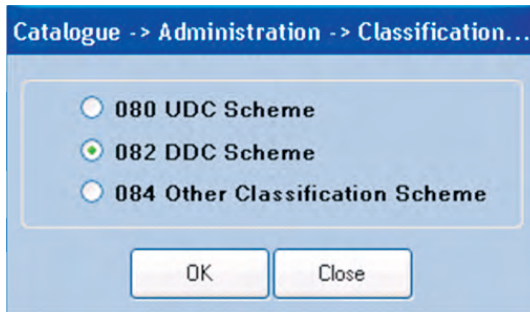
Mnemonic labels identify elements that contain coded information describing the item and the record itself. We can create standard format for Fixed Field for Books /Theses, Serials and Authority. At the time of data, if we need to change any of the elements of this template, you can do so by choosing 'Modify' option.

Mnemonic Label	Field Name	Value	Code
Type of date/Pub. status [06]	Dates: unknown	n	n
Illustrations [18-21]	No attempt to code		
Target audience [22]	General	g	g
Form of item [23]	Regular print reproduction	r	r
Nature of contents [24-27]	No attempt to code		
Government publication [28]	Other	Z	Z
Conference publication [29]	No attempt to code		
Festschrift [30]	No attempt to code		
Index [31]	No attempt to code		
Literary form [33]	No attempt to code		
Biography [34]	No attempt to code		

Please study 'MARC21' format a bit in detail before you attempt to feed information in the templates provided here. If you are unsure of certain specifications, please contact INFLIBNET co-ordinator, who will suggest simplest way of using Pre-defined Data-entry template.

### 1.4.3 Classification Scheme

As per MARC specifications if your records are having UDC Classification Scheme, Classification Number will go in tag 080, similarly for DDC Classification Number will go in tag 082 and for all other Schemes it will go in tag 084, you can set default Classification Scheme for your library records using this option.



### 1.4.4 Data Entry Template

Although there are default data entry forms, SOUL 2.0 facilitates users to create their own templates for data entry.

New templates can be created for Data Entry operation if you have a specific type of material and you want to store it separately from rest of the collection.

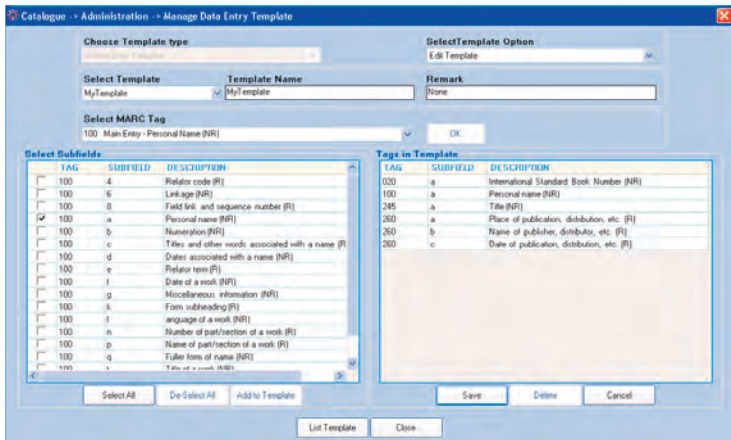
Basically there are two types of templates :

- κ Bibliographic Templates
- κ Authority Templates

Books, Serials, Theses fall under Bibliographic Templates, while Authority Templates deal with various Authority Files you wish to use while bibliographic data is entered-drop-down list along the respective fields will appear when Authority Templates are created.

Data-Entry templates for following types of collection are being supplied by default;

- 1] Books
- 2] Serials
- 3] Theses



MARC format is used to deal with these Templates. Please refer to MARC manual for understanding description for each encoded Tag. To create new template use the following steps

- ✦ First “Choose template type” you want to create (i.e. Bibliographic or Authority)
- ✦ Then select “Template Option” Which enables you to choose any of the four options, i.e. New Template, New Template Based on Existing, Edit Template and Delete Template
- ✦ In case of “New Template” enter template name, else choose existing template you want to edit/delete or create a copy.

- ✦ Now choose corresponding MARC tag and press OK button, on left hand side you will have selection options for “Subfields” in your chosen tag, select/deselect the subfields as per your requirement, and then click add to template.
- ✦ Similarly do this operations for all the tags and corresponding subfields to create your own template.

List of available templates can be seen by pressing “List Template” button.

### 1.4.5 Report Template

This option allows you to create new template or Add/Edit/Delete existing templates. You can select any of the field of your choice and view the report using Catalogue->Reports->Basic Report/Advance Report.

#### Create New Template for Report

- ✦ Choose “New Template”, “Edit/View Template” or “Delete Template” from template administration option.
- ✦ Enter template name and remark fields and select the report height and width.
- ✦ Then select the fields which you want to display from the left side list box and drop it to the report layout area.
- ✦ You can also resize the fields which you have selected
- ✦ Please note that while entering page size one should enter size in “inches” only without specifying the unit of measurement.

### 1.4.6 Global Search and Replace

Global Search and Replace option can be used selectively. Information in specified fields of all the records in the database can be corrected at one 'Go' with the help this option. For example, there may be occasions when we need to replace all the Dewey Class Nos. based on new edition (e.g. 001.64 was replaced by 004 in DDC20), or may be you need to correct Subject Term which was wrongly entered in some records. You also have an option to Search and Replace individual records after ensuring that the records chosen for correction are the right ones.

SrNo	Title	Author	Call No	Location	Accession No	Status
1	South Asian Urban Experience /	Sharma, R.C.	HT 147/ABR3	SHML	190133	Available
2	South Asian Urban Experience /	Sharma, R.C.	HT 147/ABR3	SHML	T30201	Available
3	Instrumental method in chemical analysis - analytical c	Sharma, B.K.	QD 75/546	SHML	186378	Available
4	Instrumental method in chemical analysis - analytical c	Sharma, B.K.	QD 75/546	SHML	241447	Available

### 1.4.7 Delete Bibliographic Record (s)

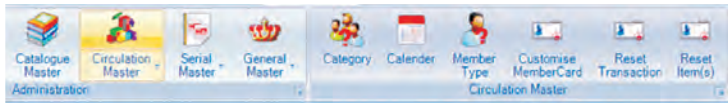
Please ensure you use this option with thorough understanding of its effects and be selective in using it.

Delete Bibliographic Records will allow you to delete range of records at one stroke. This option can be used when you are sure that certain records needs deletion rather than corrections.

This option is also useful in case you have imported bulk records, and you want to delete all imported records together.

To avoid mishaps of deleting records unknowingly please retain this authority only with the 'superuser' - and password should never be shared for any reason and no other user should be allowed to customise 'Administration' options.

## 1.5 Circulation Master



Circulation Master will allow you to create structure of parameters needed to take care of circulation operation in the library. You should have data or your member categories and privileges, list of holidays etc. ready with you before you start filling in the Circulation Master.

### 1.5.1 Category

Categories of various types of users are created and stored in this Master with their borrowing/usage rights/privileges.

Various Types of Users – UG Students, PG Students, PG Part-time Students, Faculty (Permanent), Visiting Faculty, Office Staff, Library Sc. Department Staff, Other Institution's Staff/Faculty and there can be many more. You will be able to set-up borrowing privileges for each type of category here.



Feed appropriate information in requisite rows and columns created for each type of category and save the data each time you update the details.

Code  Category   
 Duration   
 Membership Charges   
 Deposit Amount   
 Maximum allowed Overdue   
 Maximum allowed Items   
 Category End Date

Category Details						
	Code	Description	Duration	Charges	Max Due	Deposit
	00	Under Grad	12	50.00	0.00	0.00
▶	01	Post Gradu	12	50.00	0.00	0.00
	02	Fac.Lib.U.G	12	50.00	0.00	0.00

Categories of members you want to create e.g. 00 for Undergraduate students, 01 for Postgraduate students, 10 for Faculty Members etc., their membership duration e.g. 1/2/3 years or may be 30 years (Life Time) for faculty members – membership subscription (if any), deposit, maximum amount can accumulate against each category towards overdue charges/any other charges; maximum no. of items allowed for various types of borrowing material and the expiry date for that category.

In the field named “Maximum Allowed Items” if no value is entered, member belonging to that category can get total number of items issued as sum of total items specified in “Maximum Allowed” for each type of material. If user enters some value as “Maximum Allowed

Items”, this value will work as upper cap of total items, e.g. If you have entered “Max Allowed Item” as 3, and in “Privileges” if you have entered “Max Allowed” for books and theses as 3 and 2 respectively, In this case, system will restrict maximum issues to 3, by-passing the total allowable items as 5, So the member belonging the that category can either 2 Books and 1 Theses, or all 3 Books or 1 Books and 2 Theses i.e. limiting total number of items by 3.

“Category End Date” field can be set to semester/session end date for respective category to have auto effect in “Membership End Date” in Member Entry Form” of Circulation.

Privileges based on Type of Material | Privileges based on Collection Type (Optional)

Privilege Group

Category Name: Post Graduate Student

Material: Textual Document

Issue Period(Days): 30 | Max Reserve(No.s): 0

Max Allowed(No.s): 3 | Resv. Period(Days): 0

**Phase -I Fine** | **Phase -II Fine**

Duration (Days): 0 | Duration (Days): 0

Charges: 0.00 | Charges: 0.00

Default Charges: 1.00

Member Privileges Details								
	Category Desc	Media D	Issue Pe	Max Allo	Max Res	Reserve	Fine Pha	Fine Pt
▶	Post Graduate	Textual	30	3	0	0	0	0.00
	Post Graduate	Theses	0	0	0	0	0	0.00
	Post Graduate	Reports	0	0	0	0	0	0.00
	Post Graduate	Meeting	0	0	0	0	0	0.00
	Post Graduate	Patent	0	0	0	0	0	0.00
	Post Graduate	Standar	0	0	0	0	0	0.00

Buttons: Add, Update, Delete, Save, Cancel

Privileges based on type of material you can allot privileges to each category of members e.g. UG Student will be allowed to borrow Textual Documents, maximum 2 nos. for 30 days; maximum reservations allowed 5 nos., each reservation will be kept aside for them for a period of 5 days; Overdue Charges (Fine) of Re.1/- per day per item (Phase I) and Rs.2/- per day per item in Phase II. Default Charges of Fine – Re.1/- per day per item. Likewise for all the categories of members this info is necessary.

To add/modify privileges for different type of materials click on “Add” or “Update” button, choose corresponding type of material and enter values as described above.

If your library has to assign Privileges based on Collection Type (optional), Click the corresponding tab and fill the requisite information.

Privileges based on Type of Material | Privileges based on Collection Type (Optional)

**Category Collection Details**

Category Name: Post Graduate Students

Collection Type: General

"Overnight" issue  Max no items allowed to be reserved: 2

"On-premises" issue  End time for "on-premises" issue: 4:00:00

Collection Type				
CollectionType	CategoryNa	Over-night issue	On-premises issu	Maximum Rest
▶ General	Post Graduate St	Y	N	2

Privileges based on collection type allows you to define type of collection that can be issued to each type of category for parameters such as “On Premises Issue” and time period e.g. UG student will be allowed to borrow only “General” and “Textbooks” but not “Reference” or “Special Collection”; while faculty may be allowed to borrow all types of collection. While UG students may be allowed to borrow “Special Collection” only on the library premises up to 4.00 pm and “Reference Collection” overnight for one day (may be with faculty permission).

### 1.5.2 Calendar

Calendar is used for storing official public holidays declared for the library. It will allow you to select weekly-off for the library will be closed. The information stored here will be used to skip the due date of the material loaned (due date is calculated based on the privileges set for each category of member). The format for storing holiday details as follows.

**Library Holidays**

Week off Entry

"Weekly-Off" Day

Save Update

Holiday Details

Date  Occasion

Holiday Date	Holiday Name
3/26/2005	Hok (2nd Day)
11/1/2005	Diwali
11/2/2005	Diwali (New Year Day)
11/3/2005	Bhai Bij
11/4/2005	Ramzan Id
1/14/2006	Makarsankranti

Add Delete Save Cancel Exit

### 1.5.3 Member Type

This option is useful especially for book bank, here one can specify issue privileges based on type of member, these parameters will have effect in “Book Bank Issue” in Circulation module. Here one can give restrictions in terms of either “Maximum Money” and “Maximum Books” or both, At some libraries issues under Book Bank is restricted by total number of books, in this case one can enter maximum books, In case if you want to restrict number of book received by the total accumulated money, enter maximum money, issues under book bank can also be controlled by specifying both the values.

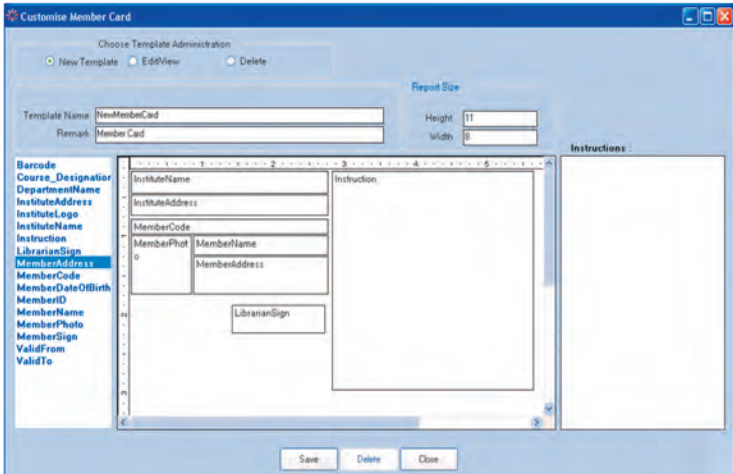
The date entered in “End Date” field will be default due date for issues under book bank category.

Member Type	Maximum Money	Maximum Books	End Date
General	0.00	5	5/21/2010
SC	1000.00	5	5/21/2010
ST	1000.00	0	5/21/2010

### 1.5.4 Customise Member Card

This option allows you to create new template or Add/Edit/Delete existing templates meant for printing membership number, barcodes, membership identity cards with requisite membership information etc.

The template facilitates customization of size of various data fields for membership card.



### To create template for membership card

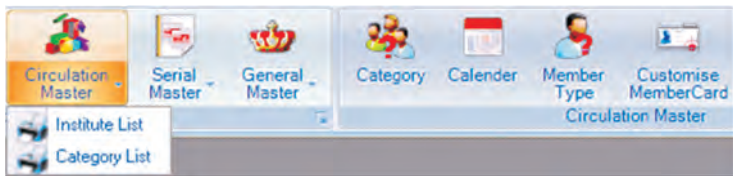
- K** Choose “New Template”, “Edit/View Template” or “Delete Template” from template administration option.
- K** Enter template name and remark fields and select the report height and width.
- K** Then select the fields which you want to display on member card from the left side list box and drop it to the report layout area.
- K** If you want to print the instruction on member card, write it in the right side panel.

You can check the preview of the template using member card option in circulation module.

### 1.5.5 Reset Transaction

This operation allows user to clear transaction status of selected member, it will clear all the issued, reserved books, financial dues of member selected. This operation needs to be exercised only with administrator privileges.

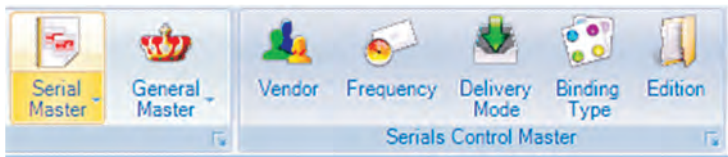
### 1.5.6 Circulation Master Report



We can generate two reports from Circulation Masters :

- 1] Institute List (with its Depts etc)
- 2] Membership Categories List

### 1.6 Serials Master



Serials Master needs standard/common data elements for the periodicals, journals, newspapers, magazines and serials that a library subscribes to. There are various types of collections – like Reference, Special Collection, and Bound Volumes of these periodicals.

Information needed for Serials Master includes Names of the vendors Frequency of the serials, Delivery Modes (Airmail, Surface Mail, Courier etc) Binding Agencies and types of Serials Collections (Reference, Special, BVs, Rare) etc.

### 1.6.1 Vendor (Publisher/Supplier/Binder)

Serials Vendors can be of two types i.e., publishers (directsubscription) and Suppliers (Agencies). Binding Agents (Binders) is yet another types of vendor that are required for binding serials.

**Serial Vendors**  
**Publisher/ Supplier/ Binder**

Category:   Inactive  Active

Code:  Name:

Address:

City:  PIN:  Country:

Cont. Person:

E-Mail:  Phone:

Telex:  Fax:

Remark(s):

<< First < Previous Next > Last >>

Add Save Modify Delete Close

### 1.6.2 Frequency

Arrival schedule for check-in of serial is generated based on the information provided in publication frequency master. Therefore it is necessary to codify various types of frequencies of the journals subscribed by the library. Even irregular frequency is a one type of frequency – assign code for these journals. Users are requested not to delete any value from this master as it will reflect on status of a continuing publication.

**Frequency Master**

Code:  Description:  No. of issue:  Period:  Years:

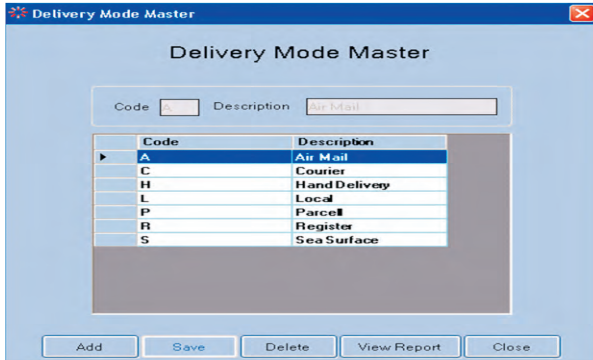
Name	Code	Days	Months	Year	Days/Month/Year	Issues/Year
Not determined	#	0	0	0	Y	0
Seventy two times a year	@	0	0	1		72
Sixteen times a year	1	0	0	1		16
Eighteen times a year	2	21	0	0		18
Annual	a	0	0	1	Y	1
Bimonthly	b	0	2	0	M	6
Seamweekly	c	3	0	0	D	104
Daily	d	1	0	0	D	365
Biweekly	e	14	0	0	D	26

Add Save Modify Delete View Report Close



### 1.6.3 Delivery Mode

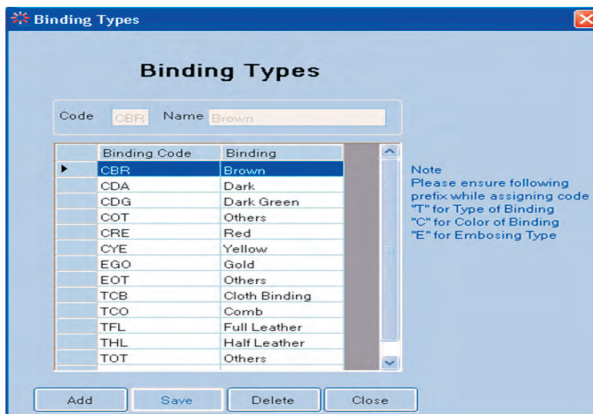
Serials are received through various Delivery Modes. Assign unique code to each type of mode – e.g. A for Airmail, C for Courier etc.



### 1.6.4 Binding Type

In large libraries specific type of binding is used for ease of identification and to separate Bound Volumes Collection from other BVs. This master takes care of three aspects,

1. Colour of binding: if you want to specify colour, prefix the code with "C"

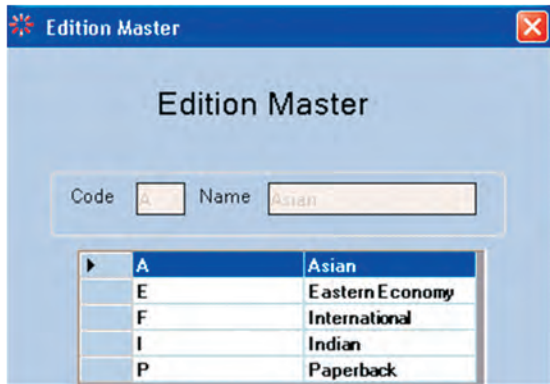


2. Type of Binding: if you want to specify type of binding e.g. cloth, leather etc. Prefix “T” in code
3. Embossing type prefix “E”

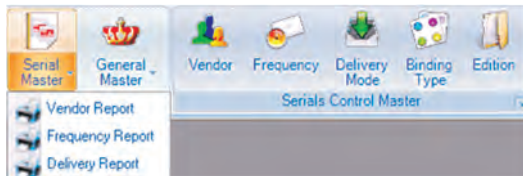
Entries in above form will get reflected at time of order process for binding of serials.

### 1.6.5 Edition

We receive serials, which are published from India or abroad. To differentiate Indian editions from International editions, we should assign code for specific journal. All the assigned codes are stored in the Edition Master window (e.g.F – International edition, I – Indian edition, A–Asian edition, E–European edition etc).

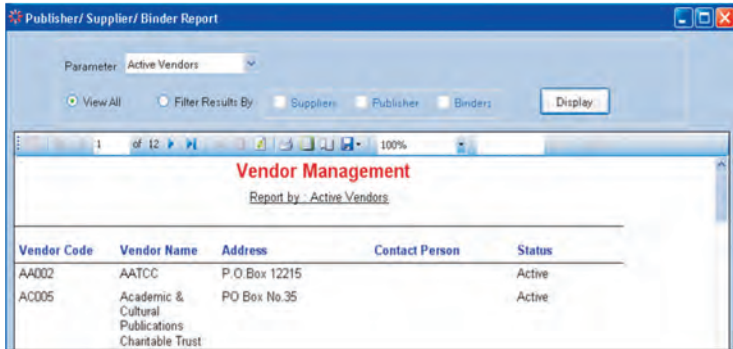


### 1.6.6 Serials Master Reports



We can generate variety of reports from these masters such as: Vendor Report; Frequency Report and Delivery Report.

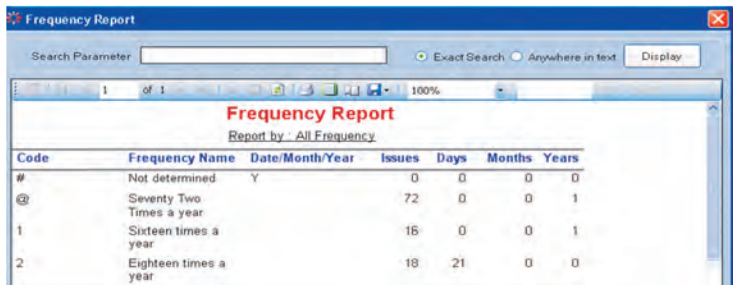
### 1.6.6.1 Vendor Report



Vendor report can be generated by Active/Inactive/city wise/ status wise besides listing of all the vendors, these report can also be filtered by Supplier/Publisher/Binder.

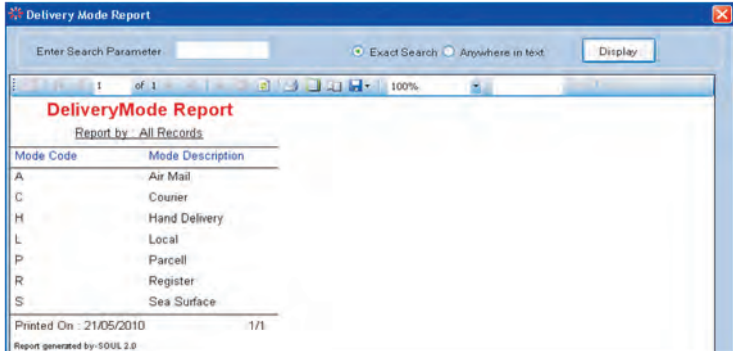
### 1.6.6.2 Frequency Report

One can generate listing of all entered frequency either by “exact search” or “search by any word” within text, if you want listing of all the frequencies, in that case don't enter anything as search parameter, choose option as “Anywhere in Text” and press display button.



### 1.6.6.3 Delivery Modes Report

One can generate listing of all delivery modes using this report, the report parameters are same as described in “Frequency Report”.



## 1.7 General Master

General Master provides options depicted in menu bar reproduced below



Please ensure following info/data is ready before we start feeding information in the respective options which are self-explanatory.

**Currency :** Default Currency (Indian Rupees), Conversion rates for frequently used foreign currencies.

**Budget :** Income Budget  
 – Year-wise funds available under various Grants, e.g. UGC, State, Central Budget, Dept budgets etc.  
 Expenditure Budget Heads  
 - e.g. Books, Periodicals, Newspapers, Binding, Online subscriptions, e Books, Multimedia etc. Or may be allocations to various Branches/Departments

**Institute :** Master/Head/Central Institute, various Departments, Courses offered etc.

**Subjects :** Standard List of Subject Headings assigned to each Class No.

**Physical Media :** Various Types of material in the Library – e.g. printed books, multimedia CDs, audio-visuals, charts, videos, periodicals and Bound Volumes etc.

### 1.7.1 Currency

Set default currency as needed – (in our case it may be Indian Rupees). Entry in “Currency Master” is reflected mainly at ordering and invoicing process. It is recommended to always update the conversion rates for commonly used currencies – may be every month. This option also allows us to add new currency with its code and its Conversion Rate, if needed. Currencies of most of the countries are already stored here with their respective codes – please note down the codes for frequently needed currencies for your Library, such as US Dollar, British Pound, Euro etc. It will be useful while entering data in Acquisition/Cataloguing.

Currenc	Currency	Conversion Rate	Country	Date
IDR	Indonesia Rupiahs	0.00	Indonesia	07/08/2008
ILS	Israel New Shekels	12.00	Israel	07/08/2008
INR	India Rupees	1.00	India	07/08/2008
IOD	Iraq Dinars	0.04	Iraq	07/08/2008
IRR	Iran Rials	0.00	Islamic Republic of Iran	07/08/2008

**Add :** Select Currency Management -> Enter Currency Code -> Currency -> Country -> Date -> Conversion Rate -> and 'Save'. If Code/Country it will allow you to add the new currency with requisite details.

**Modify :** Double click on the first column of the currency you wish to modify edit details and click 'Save'.

**Delete** : To delete any record, double click on first column, select the currency you wish to delete. 'Delete' button will get activated. Click it to delete the desired currency permanently from the database.

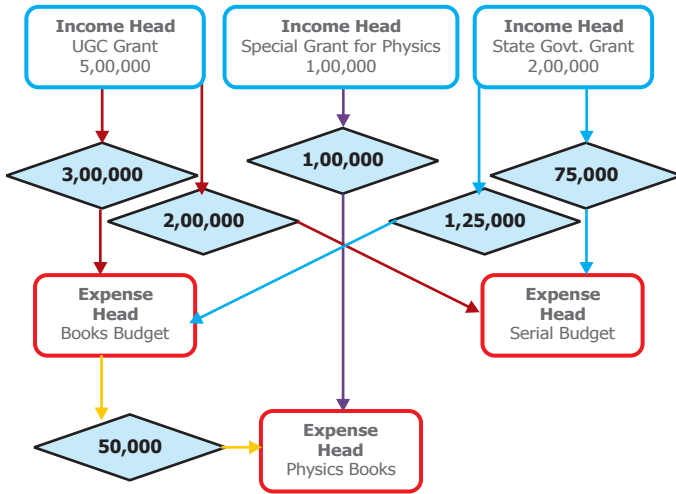
In 'Browse' mode if you click on any column in the window, the data in that column will get sorted.

### 1.7.2 Budget

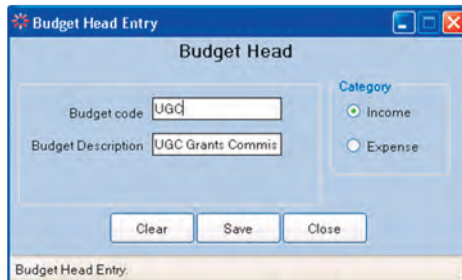
This is a crucial master. The information under various budget heads (Income and Expenditure) is stored here. In a college or a university, there are number of departments/centres. There are number of separate budgets from which a library adds resources to its collection. There are a number of budget heads. You can Add, Delete, Modify, Income and Expenditure heads. Feed information about the amounts allocated etc in this from this master sheet. Since Many decisions depend upon the latest balances available under various heads –Ensure you have correct details stored here. Access to this master should be restricted to authorised users dealing with budgets. SOUL facilitates multiple sources of Income and Expense head as explained in following case;

Let us take one practical example typical to a University Library:  
In 2008-09 a university library received (Income) grants from UGC (Rs.5,00,000/-) and from State Govt (Rs.2,00,000/-), Apart from that there is a special grant for Physics (Rs 1,00,000) from some other sources. Out of this different Expenditure Heads are created based on either norms or decisions of the Library Committee. The decisions are as follows

1. Allocate Rs. 3,00,000/- for Books from UGC Grant
2. Allocate Rs. 2,00,000/- for Serials from UGC Grant
3. Allocate Rs. 1,25,000/- for Books from State Govt. Grant
4. Allocate Rs. 75,000/- for Serials from State Govt. Grant
5. Apart from Special Grant for Physics (Rs. 1,00,000) allocate 50,000 more from books budget to enhance the budget for physics.



Now at the outset create three “Income Heads” by selecting 'Add' option and filling up total grants under each head. Allocate appropriate code to each of the heads mentioned above when you enter information on each fields.



Now create all the “Expenditure Heads” below Income Heads – and then apportion requisite amounts to each of the heads (Income and Expense).

To receive/add amount in Income Head, please click “Add” button under income tab, you will be prompted with following pop-up entry screen in which the received amount can be entered.

Source of amount in “Expense Head” can be either from Income or Expense head, to enter amount in expense head, first choose “Expenditure” tab and then choose proper source of amount (Either income or expense) and fill-in requisite details as per your selection criteria.

IT staff or the library system administrator should take help of the Head Librarian or the Dy. Librarian before making any changes to the information stored here. Please remember that there are chances of getting misleading reports if the **Master information is not correctly fed-in**. Amounts of Orders, Payments made, ad-hoc grants etc are deducted or added from the opening balances stored here.



In Nutshell, To Create new Income/Expenditure Head, select 'Budget' - > On left side box of Budget Process screen click <Add>, Enter 'Code' and 'Heading' for Income/Expenditure as needed.

To Apportion amounts received against/allocated to each Income/Expenditure Head, select 'Budget' - > On right side box of Budget Process window click <Add>, select appropriate Head from the drop-down menu, fill-up the amounts on Allocation of Budget window and <Save> to update the figures.

To Reallocate/transfer of amounts from one head to another please use 'Budget Transfer' option from the top menu Bar.

The consolidated budget report can be generated any time by selecting 'Budget Report' option.

### 1.7.3 Budget Transfer

There may be occasions (mainly during the last few months of the financial year) when you may have to transfer some unspent amounts of some of the Budgets to other Budget Heads. In some cases you may have to transfer unspent budgets to next financial year.

Use Budget Transfer option to make any changes in the already allocated/apportioned Budget Heads. Please note that you can also use transfer options for carry forward budget to next year within same budget head.

**Budget Transfer**

Transfer ID: 11871001      Date: 21/05/2010

Source		Destination	
Financial Year From	2005 To 2006	Financial Year From	2005 To 2006
Source Budget	UGC SAP(R) Dept of Archaeol	Destination Budget	ASIHSS(NR) - Education
Available Amount	50000	Available Amount	525220

Transfer Amount: 50000

Remarks:

View Report   Add   Save   Close

In Nutshell, to transfer/reallocate amounts from one Income/Expense Head to another;

- 1] Specify Financial Year of the Source Budget Head
- 2] Select Source Budget Head from drop-down Menu
- 3] Available amount will automatically appear
- 4] Specify amount needed to be transferred
- 5] Feed authorisation information in 'Remark'
- 6] Choose Financial Year of the Destination Budget Head
- 7] Select Destination Budget Head from drop-down Menu
- 8] Save the record 'Budget updated message will appear.

#### 1.7.4 Institute Detail

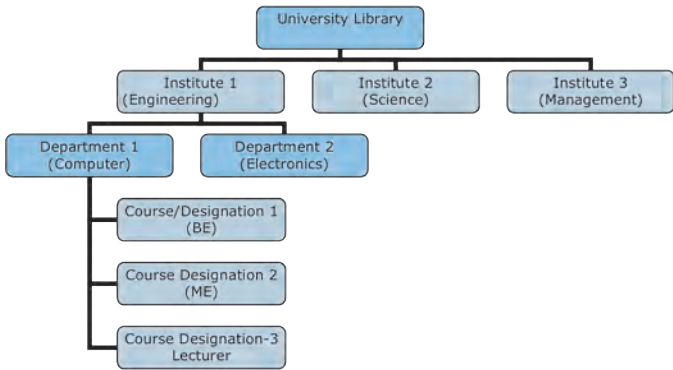


Under this master option, we store detailed tree-branch information of our Institute/University/College/Library, its various Departments or there might be separate Courses or Designations. The operations are almost self-explanatory while creating, modifying or deleting information from these records.

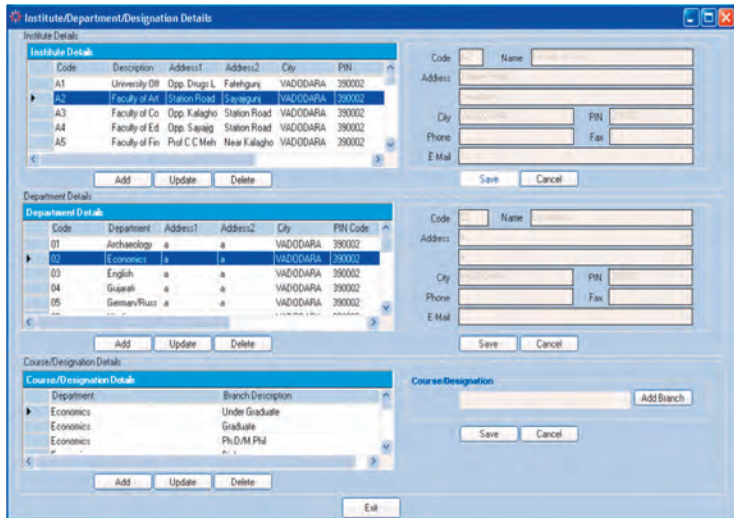
Please ensure following data is ready before we start feeding information.

Name of the Institution	: University / College / Centre
Names of the Faculties	: e.g. Arts, Commerce, Law, Science
Names of the Departments:	e.g. Sociology, Psychology, Physics, Accounting etc.
Names of the Courses	: e.g. Under Graduate, PG Diploma, PhD, PG, etc.

Following typical University tree-structure will explain the logic observed by SOUL in creating the hierarchical relationship between various departments and its courses and the end-user. Follow top-down sequence to fill up the requisite information in required fields.



Following example will further explain the practical aspect of the relationship needs to be established to create this structure. We also need to assign Codes to each element in the tree to make it unique in the whole chain.



If the required course/designation is not available under chosen department please add it by clicking 'Add Branch' button.

## Course/Designation Details

The data in this window needs to be entered with proper codes. Please ensure you have exhaustive list of all the details. You will be allowed to add new codes but you will not be able to delete any of the codes later, once you start using them in the live conditions.

In Nutshell, To Create a new Institute / new Branch select 'Add' and assign unique code, fill-up requisite details like address etc and 'Save'.

Code	Name
00	University Officer
01	Under Graduate
02	Post Graduate
06	Ph.D/M.Phil
07	Diploma
08	BBA/BCA
09	LLB
10	BLISc/MLISc
11	M.P.A.(Master of Performing Ar
12	M.A.(Fine)(Master of Fine Arts)
13	M.A.(Master of Arts)
14	M.Com.(Master of Commerce)

To Create a new Department under that Institute/Branch, bring the highlighter on the row of the newly created Institute/Branch in the upper-window, and select 'Add' in the left middle window meant for department details – assign new code and feed address etc and Save'.

To Create a new Course/Designation under new Department, bring the highlighter on the row of the newly created department in the bottom window, and click 'Add Branch' in the right window – after feeding appropriate information, click 'Save'.

To Update (or Edit/rectify) information in any of the records, follow the same steps mentioned above, but click 'Update' instead of 'Add'. Please do not forget to 'Save' corrected/updated details.

To Delete any of the branches, follow the same steps mentioned to Add/Update information, but click 'Delete' to remove the record from the database.

'Please remember – SOUL will not allow you to delete the Institute unless the department and branches below have no records, i.e. the institute will be deleted only if there are no members, no course/designations/department, entered below the respective head.

#### Reports / Lists

You can always generate master list of the records under institute details by selecting institute report.

### 1.7.5 Country Master

You can choose default country by selecting this option. You can 'Add' new country and its code by feeding information here. You can select default country by ticking the box against the country code.

**Country Master**

Code: AF    Name: Afghanistan

Country Code	Country Name
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> af	Afghanistan
<input type="checkbox"/> alu	Alabama
<input type="checkbox"/> aku	Alaska
<input type="checkbox"/> AL	ALBANIA
<input type="checkbox"/> aa	Albania
<input type="checkbox"/> ABC	Alberta
<input type="checkbox"/> ae	Algeria
<input type="checkbox"/> DZ	ALGERIA
<input type="checkbox"/> as	American Samoa
<input type="checkbox"/> an	Andorra
<input type="checkbox"/> AD	ANDORRA

Buttons: Add, Save, Delete, Cancel, Close

Codes have been allocated to all the countries of the world. If you have to 'Add' new country then this option can be used. If you need to delete any country for any reason click on the country code line and click 'Delete' and click 'Save' to effect the change that you have made in the master records.

### 1.7.6 Language Master

You can choose default language by selecting this option. You can 'Add' new language and its code by feeding information here. Codes for most of the languages of the world are already fed in. You have option to 'Add' and 'Delete' any of the codes for the language. Language entered here will be available for your bibliographic records.

Language Code	Language
aar	Afar
abk	Abkhaz
ace	Achinese
ach	Acoli
ada	Adangme
ady	Adygei
afa	Afroasiatic
afh	Afrihili (Artificial language)
afr	Afrikaans
ain	Ainu
ajm	Aljam'a
aka	Akan

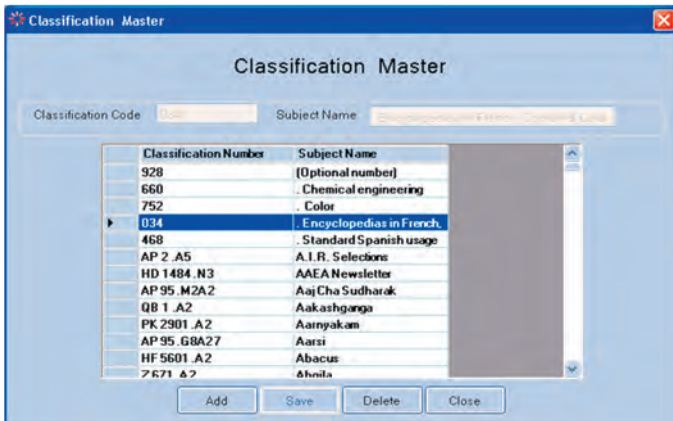
### 1.7.7 Subject Master

Screen under this menu-option allows you to feed Class No. to take advantage of the subject searches conducted and also to pick-up Subject-Heading while creating records for the titles added.

This is a unique facility of SOUL. Standard Keywords, Subject Headings fed-in Classification Master will be automatically picked up and placed under 'Uncontrolled Terms' (subject headings) when new record is created for the resource titles. It is just like an Authority File for

subject terms. This will automatically help in selecting standardised terms for the subject catalogue.

Please ensure that the selection of terms is done under proper supervision. Data-entry staff should not coin new terms, but invariably use the one mentioned against each Class No. Following example of '658' General Management from DDC will be helpful in understanding its utility, for example, for adding resource on Marketing Management - and assigning 658.8 as DDC Class No. - key terms appearing in this master - i.e. Marketing Management will be picked up from here and will be placed under MARC21 field for Subject Added Entry Tag : 653 \$1 (Primary).



For smaller libraries, this facility will help in standardising terms and variation in spellings, grammatical variants, and data-entry operating errors can very well be avoided. Please remember, this utility is mainly provided for those libraries where technical processing of documents is handled by a few and in- depth subject analysis of the documents is not needed. In larger libraries, where in-depth analyses of documents is done, use of MARC21 other Subject Added Entry Tags under (6xx) like Topical Terms (653) or Faceted Topical Terms (654) or as per the organisation's needs, is recommended.

In Nutshell, To Add new Class No. with Subject Headings, click 'Add' button, feed Class No. and Subject Heading and click 'Save'.

To Modify any Class No., you will have to delete the entry for that Class No. and add new Class No. with appropriate Subject Heading(s).

To Delete any Class No., just select the row and click 'Delete' button.

Please ensure you have all correct Subject Headings against each Class No., including its spellings before you start data operation.

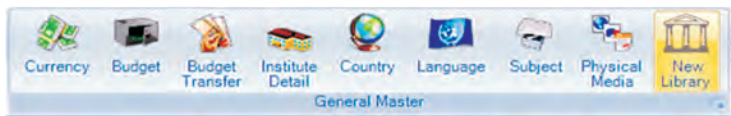
### 1.7.8 Physical Media Master

You have to assign specific codes to variety of items (resources) to the type of stock library has. These codes will be used later when individual records for various items are created. You can add new codes, using this option.

It is also recommended not to delete any existing codes as it may affect stability of the circulation system, as circulation rights are defined in context to type of material.



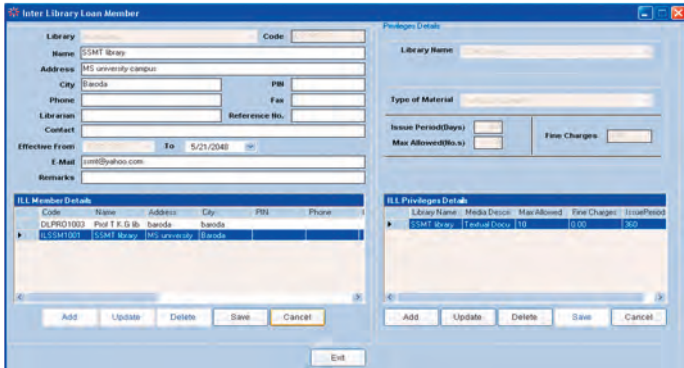
### 1.7.9 New Library (for Inter Library Loan/External Institutional Members)



You can add Library/Institute that becomes a member of our library. To facilitate Inter Library Loans, one should feed details of that Library/Institute. The details to be fed are self-explanatory.



This window can be used when library loans out material in bulk to another departmental library - e.g. Long-Term Loans or Transfers. In such cases ownership of the material is not transferred but they are made available from another location – til designated period.



To create new Institutional Member -> select Add -> fill-up requisite details of the institute and 'Save'. The new Institute will be created. To assign 'Privileges', highlight the institute in the left box and click 'Add' button appearing in the right box. Feed details like Type of Material, Maximum Loan Period, Maximum number of Items allowed and overdue charges – 'Save' details. Updated information will appear in the row against the institution.

To Update details of any existing institutional member, in the left box highlight the row in which institution's name is appearing, click 'Update' – correct details as needed – and click on 'Save'.

To Update privileges, follow the same process, but click 'Update' in the left box and correct the details – do not forget to 'Save' it.

It may be noted that if you have created any “Departmental Library” using will appear in the Circulation > Transaction > Book Transfer option as well it will also get displayed as “Coded Location” while feeding-in “Location” details in Catalogue.

It may be noted that if you have created any “Departmental Library” using will appear in the Circulation > Transaction > Book Transfer option as well it will also get displayed as “Coded Location” while feeding-in “Location” details in Catalogue.

In Nutshell, To Add new Institute as a member, select 'Add' option from left column of the window. Feed appropriate details and click 'Save'.

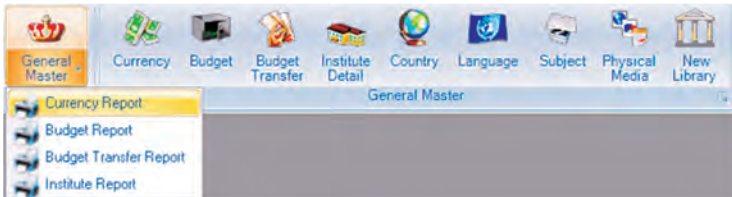
To Edit/Update details of the existing institute, select 'Update' option from left column of the window, update/correct the details and click 'Save'.

To Delete record of any institute, click on the institute appearing in ILL member box, and click 'Delete'. 'Are you sure' message will appear. If there are any records/transactions pending against that institute, you will not be allowed to delete the record for that institute.

ILL privileges are to be entered in the right column of the screen provided.

### 1.7.10 General Master Reports

You will be able to take out the following reports from this General Master by clicking respective button under the General Master menu.



#### Currency Report

To display all entered currency, their codes and conversion rates

#### Budget Report

To see current status of each budget head.

#### Budget Transfer Report

For listing of all budget transfer operation carried out between specific period

#### Institute Report.

To see hierarchical list of Institutes, Departments and Branch within each institute

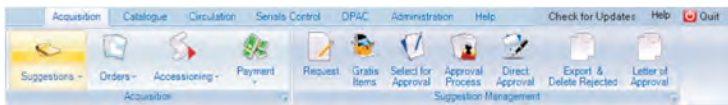


## 2.0 Acquisition

The library acquires resources based on suggestions/recommendations made by its users (in use of Academic Libraries) faculty/library committee members/students. Some libraries do select resources proactively by analysing statistics extracted from MIS (Management Information System) and going through the publishers lists or their websites.

Main task of the LIS staff is to input the suggestions/ recommendations received, into the system along with the name and/or membership number of the user (faculty/student). This helps us in informing the requester as soon as the suggested item is added in the library or its current status. Therefore before creating the suggestion record, you should have following information ready with you:

- ✦ Accurate name of the author and correct title of the item (along with other details like edition, ISBN, broad subject, year of publication, type of document etc)
- ✦ Name of the faculty/student (along with the Membership No./Department)
- ✦ Budget details (Department Budget / Central Library Budget / Faculty Budget etc.) along with budget code against which purchases are to be made
- ✦ Now click <Acquisition> and select the first option <Suggestion Management>, you get following screen with sub-options:



- |                        |                           |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1] Request             | 2] Gratis Item            |
| 3] Select for Approval | 4] Approval Process       |
| 5] Direct Approval     | 6] Export/Delete Rejected |
| 7] Letter of Approval  |                           |

From these sub-menus you will be able to successfully manage the complete process of ordering, right from creating records for suggestions received, to placing the order with designated vendors.

## 2.1 Suggestions

This module deals with suggestion management comprising of request processing and the approval of the same.

### 2.1.1 New Request

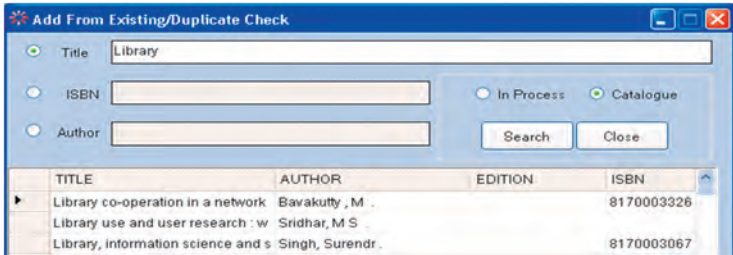
It is assumed that you have filled up 'Master' information of currency, departments, vendors, etc (if not, please select option under Administration → Acquisition Master etc. and create requisite Master Records for each of the options).

Now select 'Request' from the options and you get following screen for creating records for the suggestions received:

SOUL will automatically allocate system-generated unique sequential Request No. You have an option to feed date of request and the department (from the drop-down menu) and other requisite details.

If you want to process requests for “On Approval” items, you are requested to choose request status as “On Approval” in this case you will be prompted to select supplier from whom you have received “On Approval” items.

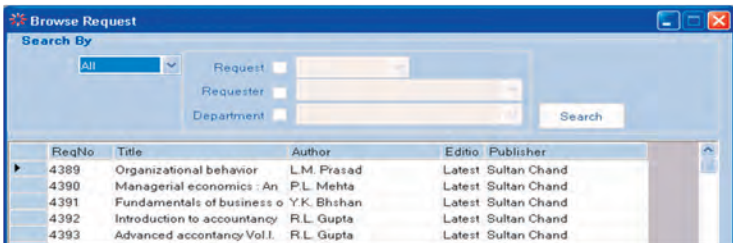
Before you process any new addition request – please ensure that the title is not already on order or on stock. Feed details of the requested title and select 'Duplicate Check'. 'Duplicate Check' can be performed by selecting one option or variety of combinations of 'Title', 'Author', 'ISBN', 'In Process', 'Catalogue'. 'Duplicate Check' should be done to take decision on whether the suggested title is already on our stock or in 'On Order' file. 'Duplicate Check' examples:



If user wants to enter request for same title again, the data can be obtained in request window by double clicking the desired title.

Once you decide on the suggestion, select 'Save' if 'Suggestion' is accepted and library has process it further for “Approval”.

In case if you want to modify existing suggestion, please choose browse button, here you can filter out particular requests by various criteria e.g. Request Number, Requester, Department, etc.

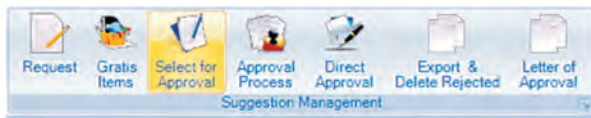


Always remember to 'Save' the request – else the record will not be created.

### 2.1.2 Gratis Item

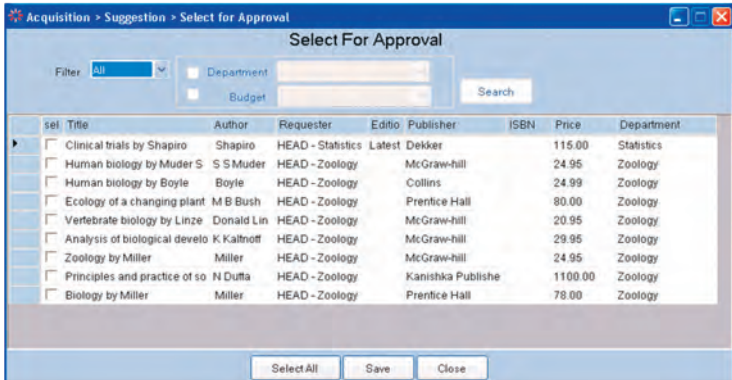
'Gratis' is a donation of document to the library – and you need to accession it. The details required from the screen shown below are straightforward. It would be a good idea to print slips ready with details needed for such additions – it will help in putting the data accurately without wasting time on looking for the details in each case.

### 2.1.3 Select for Approval



The next natural step is to get the received suggestions approved from the concerned department or the librarian or the library committee. You may not send all the suggestions for approval to one department/committee – and, therefore, you will have to select the option 'Select for Approval' from the menu under Suggestion Management. This operation will allow you to select suggestions received for a specific department or to be charged to a specific budget-head. Choose

appropriately and 'Save' the approval list. You will be able to generate approval lists, department-wise or budget-wise. Once you get the department approval or budget-holders approval, you will initiate the approval process – to take care of final steps in placing orders.



### 2.1.4 Approval Process

Once you send the list of selected suggestions for approval to the library committee/department, you may receive approval for all the titles or a few may get rejected or may remain on Hold till next budget etc. Select 'Approval Process' to sort out such titles.

'Approval Process' consists of two steps for each title:

- [i] Approved budget selection and no. of copies approved and
- [ii] Approved by (either a Library Committee meeting date, etc).

Click the box against titles(s) approved and fill in the approval copies.

Now as second step in 'Approval Process' you have to fill up details like 'Approved By'. For this purpose click 'Approve' – Pop-up Box of 'Approved By' will appear. Fill up appropriate details – and also the 'Remark' – meeting date / name of the officials etc. and click 'Save'.

This completes the process of 'Approval' – now the titles will be treated as 'To be Ordered'.



Please remember to follow the 'Approval Process' for all the titles entered using 'Gratis option'. Only 'Approved Gratis' items will be placed directly under 'Accessioning' pool skipping 'Ordering/Receiving' process as gratis items doesn't requires ordering and payment.

### 2.1.5 Direct Approval

There are some occasions when routine Approval procedure is bypassed based on recommendations committee , some titles can be ordered by following 'Direct Approval' process. Select 'Direct Approval' from the menu – and fill up the requisite details. These items will directly treated as 'To be Ordered'. Please ensure you fill up the details like 'Approved By' and 'Remarks'.

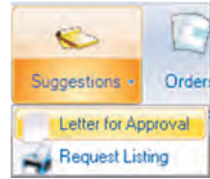
### 2.1.6 Export & Delete Rejected Item

You may now select 'Export & Delete Rejected Items' which are not likely to get ordered/ approved in future. A report of the ticked titles can be generated by clicking the 'Export & Delete' button.



### 2.1.7 Letter of Approval

Another report allows you to send a letter of approval – to titles selected by department wise or date-wise, etc.



**Approval Letter**

To,  
 Mr. APALAK SHAH  
 (002001081795)  
 15, BARODA KAMDAR SO,  
 NEAR MAHAKALI SO, AJWA  
 ROAD  
 VADODARA - 390019  
 Phone :  
 Email :

**Subject : Approval letter**

Dear Sir/Madam I am sending herewith a list of approved items which have been suggested by you or member of your department for including in the library Yours faithfully, (Librarian)

Now you are ready to place the Orders for approved books. You will be able to generate appropriate reports, lists, send acknowledgment letters with the help of other options available under 'Suggestions' Management.

### 2.1.8 Request Listing

You can generate a complete report on status of each 'Request'. Select 'Report Listing' from a bottom menu of 'Suggestions' icon. Look at the 'Status' column on the right of the Report – giving you complete picture of 'Requests' under process.

Request Report

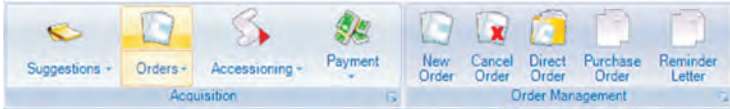
Select Fields to Display on Report  
 Request No.  Title  Author  Publisher  Year  Edition / Price  Budget Code  Currency  Status  No. Of Copies

Selection Criteria  
 Select Option: Datewise Select Status: Approved Date Between: 21/05/2010 And 21/05/2010 Display

**List of Requests**  
 Report by Status -Approved

No	Title	Author	Publisher/Place	Year	Budget Head	Status
45	Trading ans exchanges	Harris L	Oxford University Press,INDIA	2002	UGC SAP (NR), Dept of Edu & Adm.	Approved
55	What the future holds	Cooper R.N (ed.)	MIT Press,UNITED STATES	2002	UGC SAP (NR), Dept of Edu & Adm.	Approved

## 2.2 Order



The titles brought into the system through 'Suggestion Management' are now ready for placing orders.

Orders Management allows you to

- i] Place new order (which have passed through Approval Process)
- ii] Place new order directly
- iii] Print/e-mail purchase order (with desired options)
- iv] Send reminder letter to vendors (for non-supply of orders)
- v] Cancel any specific order

Before you activate 'Order Management' process, please ensure data for all the vendors is already fed-in Acquisition Master under Administration Module.

### 2.2.1 New Order

Now select 'New Order' from the menu appearing after clicking 'Orders' and you will move to order process with following screen.

Acquisition > Order > Order Process

### Order Process

**Order Details**

Sr No: 10      Order No: ordline090      Order Date: 21/05/2010  
 Supplier: Akshar Bharati Granth Bhandar      Expected Date: 21/05/2010

**Supplier Details**

Address1:   
 Address2:   
 City:       State:       Country:   
 PinCode:       Email:

Title	Author	Currency/Na	Order Price	Conversion Rate	NetPrice	Budget	Approve	Order Co
Who's who in international		United Kingd	285.00	81.40	23199	UGC SAP(R) Fac. of	1	1
A hundred years of english	Milov	Euro	69.95	56.30	3938.185	ASHSS(NR) - Pol. Sc	1	1
▶ Macro economics and the r	Backhouse	United Kingd	49.98	83.70	4183.326	UGC SAP(R) Dept of	1	1

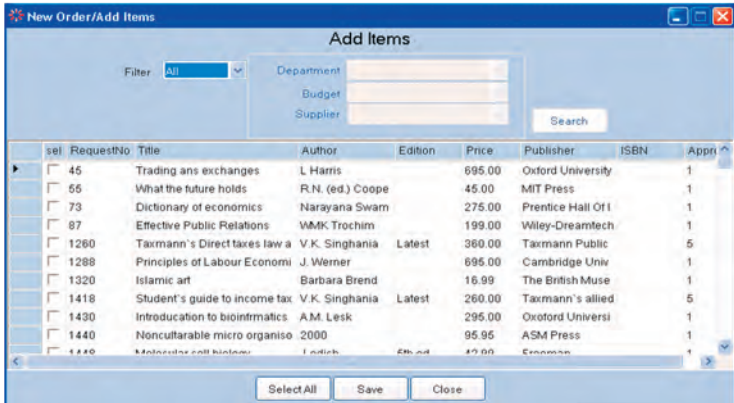
Total: 31320.511

Buttons: Add Item, Remove Item, Save, Close

Order No., Order Reference, Order and Date are generated automatically based on the information provided in the master.

Now you have to place orders for the approved titles to different vendors depending on their 'Specialisation', e.g. some vendors specialise in supplying only IT books, some on social science, engineering, etc. Select the vendor from the drop-down menu with whom you wish to place the orders. Vendor's address and other details will automatically appear in the fields (as you have fed information in Vendors Master records).

Select 'Add Items'. Following screen will appear:



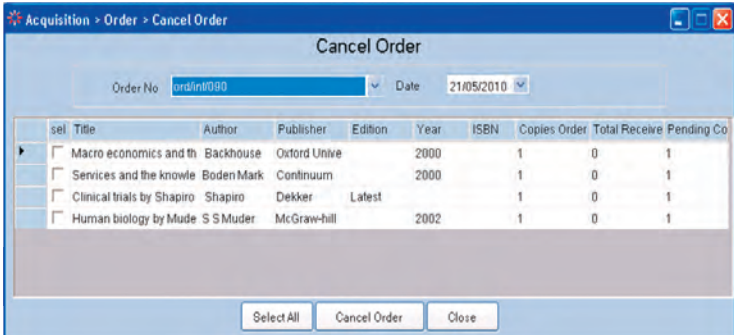
You have a choice to filter approved titles by department, budget, or a supplier. Select all or tick only the required titles for a specific vendor selected from earlier window. For example you may like to place order with Globe Publications for IT related titles from the above list. Tick mark only those titles and select 'Save' to proceed to the next step in placing the orders.

Once you finalise all the titles for order, please check the values of currency, conversion rate, copies to be ordered etc for each title. Press "Save" button to complete the process.

This will update the 'Order' file and you will either be able to print the orders and send print copy to the vendor or through e-mail.

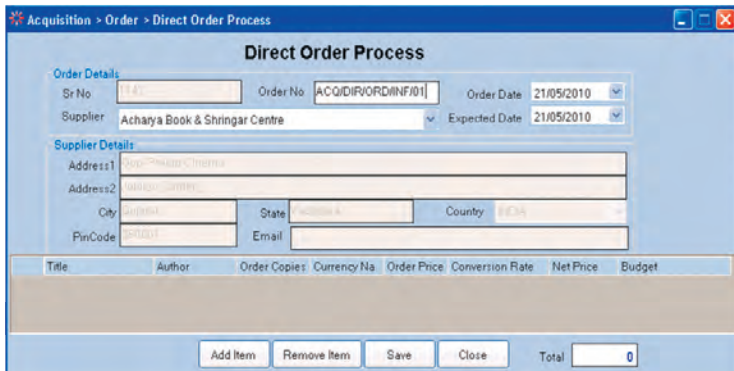
### 2.2.2 Cancel Order

Before finally sending the orders, if you need to Cancel any of the titles from the generated 'Orders' – choose 'Cancel Order' and tick the items which you want to delete from the 'Order'. Cancelling Order is also necessary to release the committed budget blocked by the unsupplied orders, ( specially for books that vendor is unlikely to supply).



### 2.2.3 Direct Order

There may be occasions when you will have to place 'Direct Orders' with specified vendors, bypassing suggestion and approval process. SOUL allows you to do that with the help of 'Direct Order Process'. Following window deals with 'Direct Order' processing. Select vendor from the drop-down menu and enter expected date of delivery.



'Add item' will open the pop-up 'Direct Approval' window to place the direct order. You need to have Direct Approval (either from the Library Committee or the Head of the Department or appropriate authority). Mention the details in appropriate fields including budget details etc and Save.

The remaining steps are the same as in case of placing 'Orders'.

Now select 'Order Management Report' from the menu under order management. You will be able to print this report or even be able to send an e-mail attached with this report to whosoever you want to. You can also export / save the report in Excel or .PDF format. Filter on 'Orders' - 'Generated', 'Cancelled', 'Completed', 'Partial' can be applied as required.

You will be able to 'Print Order' by selecting appropriate option from the 'Order Management' menu. To 'Print Order' (or other reports), follow the options under "Order Management Report" that are self-explanatory.

All the reports have a facility to browse pages, print, save etc with appropriate buttons appearing on top of the report window.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Order Management Report". At the top, there is a filter dropdown set to "Generated" and a date range filter from "21/05/2010" to "21/05/2010" with a "Display" button. Below this is a toolbar with navigation icons and a "100%" zoom level. The main content area has the heading "Order Management" and "Report by Generated status".

Order No	Supplier	Price	Order Date	Status
ordint/090	Allied Publisher Pvt.Ltd	214.93	5/21/2010	Ordered

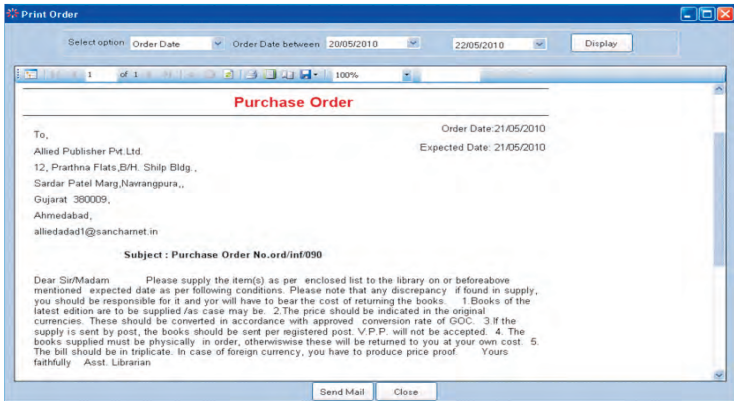
  

SlNo	Title	Author	Edition	Publisher
1	Macro economics and the real world VOL 1 by Backhouse	Backhouse		Oxford University Press
2	Services and the knowledge based economy by Mark Boden	Mark		Continuum
3	Clinical trials by Shapiro	Shapiro	Latest	Dekker
4	Human biology by Muder S	Muder		McGraw-hill

Printed On :21/05/2010 1/1  
Report generated by SOUL 2.0

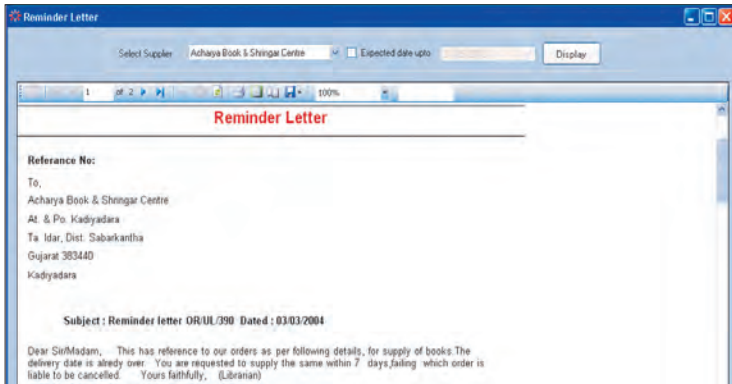
## 2.2.4 Purchase Order

Purchase orders can be generated with order number/date or vendor.



## 2.2.5 Reminder Letter

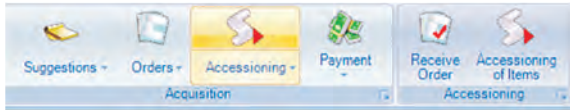
This report can be generated either by supplier or expected date of receipt of item(s).



## 2.2.6 Order Report

There are a number of options to list checked order, list of orders can be generated according to status i.e. All orders Generated orders, Completed orders, Cancelled orders, Partial orders as well as supplier wise list.

2.3 Accessioning

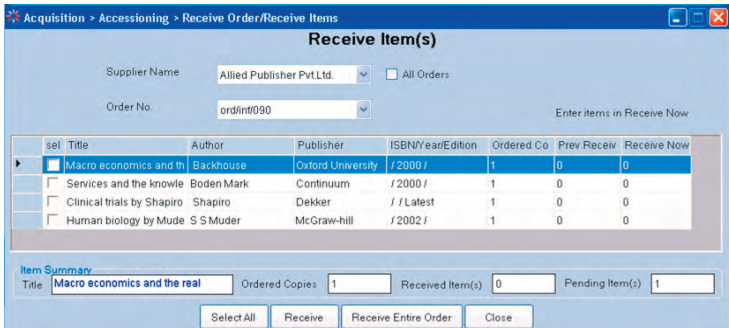


The natural sequence of operation after placing orders is 'Receive the Items' from the vendors. Vendors will start executing the orders either partially or fully. The accuracy is of paramount importance – when we 'Receive Order(s)'. Title, edition, author, publisher, price, ISBN – all details should be fed-in correctly. If there is any variation between the title ordered and title received, you have to enquire with the vendor and may have to get appropriate approval if the supplied book is to be accepted or not. However you can always receive titles less then order and pending titles can be received later using same process.

2.3.1 Receive Order

The titles for which orders have been placed will appear when you select either supplier's name or order no. You also can tick the box for all orders if you are not sure of either.

Find the titles, which were received – tick the box, fill-up no. of copies received. On the bottom menu-bar title summary will appear with requisite details. After ensuring that all the details are correct, click 'Receive'. You also have an option to choose to 'Receive Entire Order' – if all the titles against that order have been received and are supplied appropriately.



If the item received is the last item to be received from that order – 'Order Closed' pop-up box will appear.



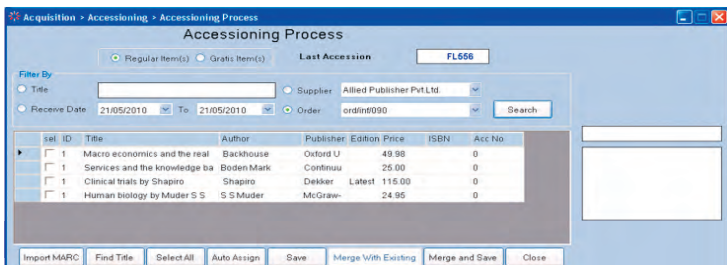
### 2.3.2 Accessioning of Item(s)

Different libraries follow different procedures to accession their documents. Some libraries just allocate continuous number to any type of material received (e.g. printed books, cassettes, CDs, computer files, e-books etc). Some categorise the documents like textual documents and digital material (CDs, etc) and follow different series for each of them. Some of them prefix / suffix the Accession No. with alphanumeric code to identify department, collection (Lending/Reference) etc. Before you assign accession number to any of the titles, get yourself acquainted with the system followed in your library.

Though it is not possible to assign duplicate accession number to any title, as its uniqueness is maintained by the system, precaution needs to be taken to ensure that numbers are not skipped in sequence or wrong prefix/suffix are added while assigning the accession number to any title. There is a facility to auto-assign the number – use it to avoid errors.

The titles, which were updated by using 'Receive Order', will automatically appear in the following screen shot provided. You will be able to search the titles received by choosing any of the following filter criteria:

- 1] Regular Items / Gratis Items
- 2] Title
- 3] Supplier
- 4] Date of Receipt
- 5] Order No.





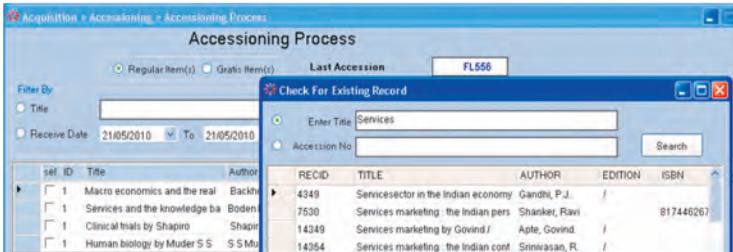
You also have facilities to 'Import MARC' record (either from the clipboard or from the saved file) for any title you are accessioning (As shown in toolbar reproduced below). This will fill-up the blank fields for which you did not have complete information when the order was placed. Please refer to Cataloguing Module for understanding the mechanism to Import MARC records.



Find Title allows you to check whether you already have the title in your collection— if it is there then you will not create additional record for the title on hand – but will assign accession number and 'Merge with Existing' record.

When you click at 'Find Title', a pop-up window appear – feed the title you want to check – if you find the title which matches the title you are about to add/accession, double-click on it – vital fields of that title will appear in the blank box on right of the window of 'Accessioning Process'. You may cross-check the complete details of the highlighted title already on stock by clicking 'Show' button on 'Find Title' window.

Now you assign the accession number either by directly clicking the empty box under 'AccNo' column or use 'AutoAssign' option. Whichever way you assign the accession number – ensure it is absolutely correct – you will not be allowed to assign the same number again. As such mistakes committed here are irrevocable. Now if this title on hand already has a record in our database (Find Title), then instead of creating a new record, you have to choose the option 'Merge with Existing'.



Double-click on the title matching the title on hand in the above window. The details of title will appear in the small window on right.

If you have received multiple copies of single title, in that case you are requested to select all the titles and click on the button 'Merge and Save' this will create a single record with multiple accession numbers.

sel ID	Title	Author	Publisher	Edition	Price	ISBN	Acc No
<input type="checkbox"/> 1	Macro economics and the real	Backhouse	Oxford U		49.98		0
<input type="checkbox"/> 1	Services and the knowledge ba	BodenMark	Continuu		25.00		0
<input type="checkbox"/> 1	Clinical trials by Shapiro	Shapiro	Dekker	Latest	115.00		0
<input type="checkbox"/> 1	Human biology by Muder S S	S S Muder	McGraw-		24.95		0

Services marketing by Govind /

Author:- Apte, Govind.

Edition:- /

ISBN:-

Record ID:- 14349

For the titles, which are not duplicate and you want to create new record for them, and if you wish to get the accession number automatically assigned from the previous sequence, select 'AutoAssign' accession number, feed appropriate data, if applicable prefix/suffix alphabet(s), and simply 'Save'. New catalogue record will be created with data elements available from the order form details. We will edit these details in cataloguing module using "Title in Process" option.

Please note that when you save accessioned records you will get a message as "AMARC record is also inserted with necessary tags filled, The record id is XXXX", for each of the title, here XXXX will a system generated unique record number assigned to that record. You can use this record number for further operations in catalogue.

### 2.3.3 Accessioning Report

This report enables you to view all the titles which has been accessioned, you can get this report by Order, Budget, Accession No as Prefix, Type of Material, Date and Range of Accession Numbers.

### 2.3.4 Barcode Report

Using this option one can generate barcode for newly accessioned book , one can generate barcodes by same criteria's as mentioned in section 2.3.3, however there is an additional provision for generating reports by Accession Numbers, where one has to enter all the accession numbers separated by comma for which barcode needs to be generate, the value entered as "Header" will appear on top of your barcode label (Please note that barcode labels are defined in Administration Module).

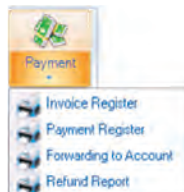
## 2.4 Payment

The next step in the reference is to process the payments for the items accessioned/received.

'Payment Process' allows you to

- i] Process the invoices for the titles received
- ii] Complete payment process (Cash/Cheque/Accounts Dept)
- iii] Generate 'Credit Note' or 'Refund' amounts for 'Advance Payments'
- iv] Forward the invoices to accounts department (Letter/e-mail)

Following reports can be generated from the 'Payment' Menu :



## 2.4.1 Invoice Process

To process invoices received against order you have to fill-up the details like:

- ✦ Invoice no. & date
- ✦ Overall discount % rate (if any)
- ✦ Currency (if different from the placed order)
- ✦ Additional charges like postage, packing, forwarding, etc (if any)
- ✦ Discount % rate for individual title (if different from overall discount)
- ✦ Budget head to be charged (in Final stage)

You will be having drop-down options available for all the key-fields. You can select the payment type (Regular/Advance). Advance option can be selected for certain titles where supplier/publisher asks for 'Advance' payment (full/part) – normally advance payments are made based on a Performa invoice sent by the supplier.

In normal course, select regular for the titles, which were received against a specific order. Following steps need to be followed in sequence to process the payment.

If you select order no. from the drop-down option, all the titles received against that order will appear in the box. Click at the title(s) for which

you are making payment (it will get highlighted).

There might be occasions when discount rates are title-specific (e.g. Indian Editions, Asian Textbooks, South-Asia Editions, International Editions). In such cases, overall discount % will not be applicable. Select 'Discount Process' while the title is highlighted (or double click the title). Small pop-up box will appear as shown below. Feed requisite discount % - net amount is calculated automatically. Press 'Save' if all the details are correct.

Ordered	Receive	Paid Copies	Currency	Conversion	Price	
1	1	0	United States Dollars	42.46	24.95	
					Discount	0 %
					Net	1059.377
<input type="button" value="Save"/>						

Repeat the process till appropriate data for all titles in that invoice appears. This process automatically keeps on updating information in the corresponding fields.

Click 'Calculate Total Amount' after you complete the 'Discount Process' for all the titles received.

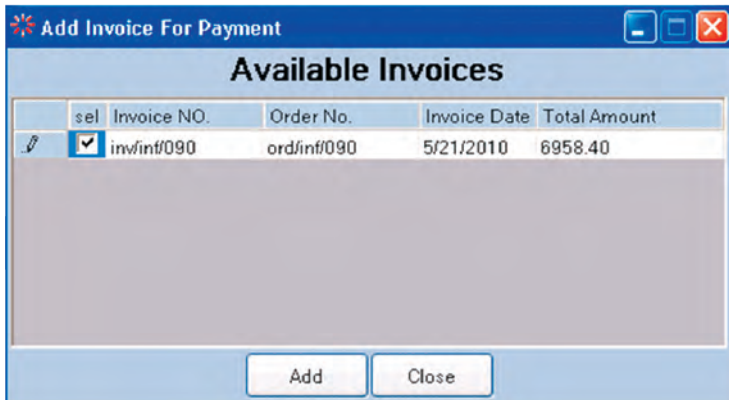
Now second part of the 'Invoice Processing' is as follows:

Some publishers/suppliers offer 'Overall Discount' which is over and above individual discounts. In such cases, feed the percentage. There might be some sundry charges on this invoice like postage/delivery charges etc. – if so feed the information in miscellaneous charges box. You are allowed to 'Round off' the final amount. Check the 'Budget' – this is the final opportunity to make any corrections for charging the invoice amount to specific budget. After checking the accuracy of information Click 'Process Invoice' - 'Invoice Generated' message-box will appear.

## 2.4.2 Payment Process

Once you process the invoice, depending upon the practice followed in your library, you have to make payments either in cash or by cheque/demand draft/credit card, processed within the library (by library's admin/accounts staff). In large set-ups the processed invoice (duly receipted with accessioning report) is sent to the Main Accounts Department of the College/University for payment.

Select 'Payment Process' and click 'Add Invoice' from the bottom menu-bar of the first screen.



The short details of available invoices will appear in the small pop-up box. Tick the box against the invoice – it will get highlighted. Click 'Add' button for selecting the invoice for payment.

Select appropriate option for 'Payment By' from the drop-down box.

If the payment processing is handled internally (i.e. from the Library's Accounts staff) fill-up appropriate payment details – Cheque/DD No., Bank Name, Branch, Bank charges (if applicable) and feed 'Forwarding Remarks' to elaborate payment details and Click 'Process Payment' button.

Acquisition > Payment > Payment Process

### Payment Process

Payment Process | Payment Settlement

Invoice NO.	Order No.	Invoice Date	Total Amount
inv/inf/090	ord/inf/090	5/21/2010	6958.40

**Payment Details**

Reference No: ACQ/PAY/INF/090      Payment By: Cheque

Cheque/DD No/Ref No: 12345625      Date: 21/05/2010

Bank Name: State Bank Of India

Branch: Gujarat University

Total Invoice Amount: 6958.4

Bank Charges: 0.00

Total Amount: 6958.4

Forwarding Remarks:

Add Invoice    Remove Invoice    Process Payment    Close

For payments, which are to be sent to accounts department – select appropriate choice from the drop-down options in 'Payment By' and click 'Process Payment' button.

'Payment Operation Completed' pop-up box will appear. Click 'OK' to complete the process.

### 2.4.3 Payment Settlement

The invoices which are sent to accounts department for processing the payments will either come back to the library with a cheque for the invoice amount or the accounts will send it directly to the supplier, with intimation to the library. In such cases, complete 'Payment Process' by selecting 'Payment Settlement' option. Feed appropriate information and click 'Save'.

Acquisition > Payment > Payment Process

### Payment Process

Payment Process | Payment Settlement

Reference No.	Amount	Date
acq/acc/090	1059.38	21/05/2010

**Payment Details**

Payment By:

Cheque/DD No/Ref No:  Settlement Date:

Bank Name:

Branch:

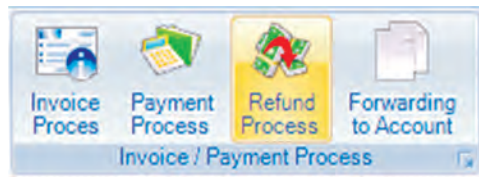
Total Invoice Amount:

Bank Charges:

Total Amount:

Forwarding Remarks:

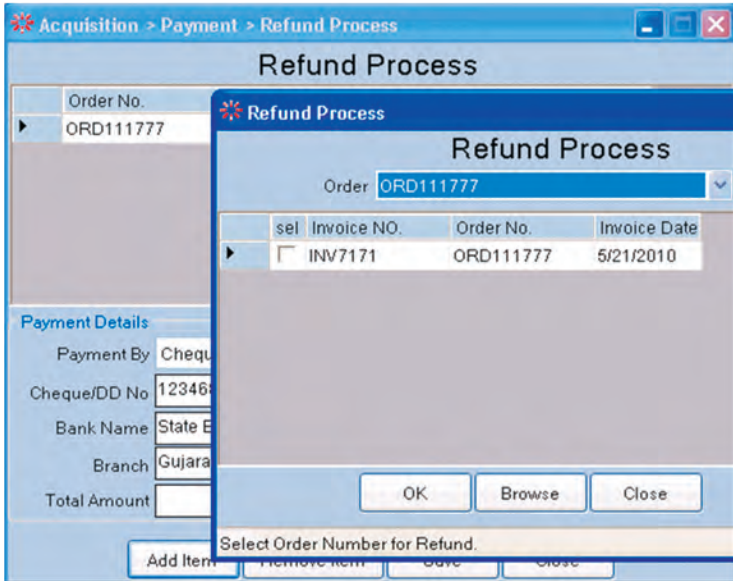
## 2.4.4 Refund Process



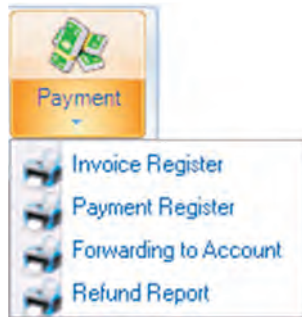
There are some occasions, when advance payment amounts need to be adjusted in cases where final supply price is less than the 'Advance Payment' amount. In such cases, you have to initiate 'Refund Process'.

Click 'Add Item' on the first screen appearing, a pop-up box will appear with a drop-down option of order nos. Select appropriate Order and feed exact amount paid and 'Save'. The supplier's account will get updated automatically to the effect of exact amount paid.



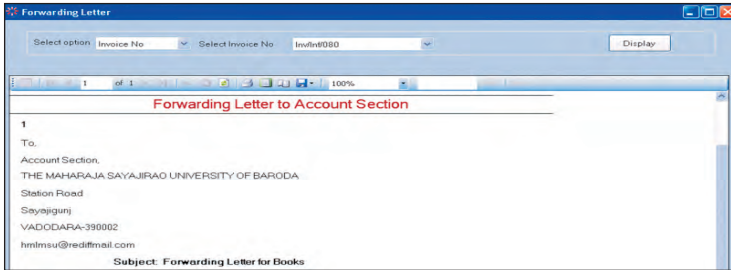


Following reports can be taken out from the payment menu with variety of filters. All of them are self-explanatory



### 2.4.5 Forwarding Letter to Account Section for Payment

This report/letter will enable you to generate forwarding letter to Account Section for process of payment. One can generate this report by Invoice No/ Date or Supplier.



## 2.4.6 Invoice Report

One can generate invoice register supplier wise, Invoice report can be generated between range of dates as well as budget wise. This report will give you status of each invoice.

Sr No	Payment Date	Invoice No / Date	Order No / Date	Payment Type	Cheque No	Amount	Bank, Branch	Remark
1	21/05/2010	ord/inf090 21/05/2010	ord/inf090 21/05/2010	Cheque	123456141	1059.38	State Bank Of India, Gujarat University	
2	21/05/2010	ord/inf090 21/05/2010	ord/inf090 21/05/2010	Accounts Section	12345625	6958.40	State Bank Of India, Gujarat University	
<b>Total</b>						<b>8017.78</b>		

Printed On : 21/05/2010  
Report generated by: SSOUL 2.0

## 2.4.7 Payment Report

This report will give you list of all the payments generated against each order and received invoice, one can generate this report by Supplier, Date and budget as report parameters.

Invoice No	Order No	Invoice Date	Supplier	Amount	Payment
inv/inf080	ord/inf090	5/21/2010	Allied Publisher Pvt.Ltd.	6958.40	Accounts Section
inv/inf080	ord/inf090	5/21/2010	Allied Publisher Pvt.Ltd.	1059.38	Accounts Section

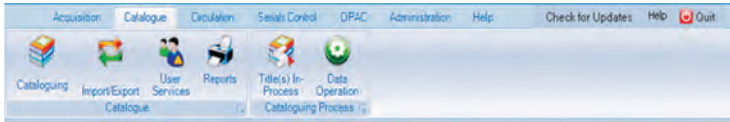
Printed On : 21/05/2010  
Report generated by: SOUL 2.0

## 2.4.8 Refund Report

This report facilitates user to generate the report of refunded amount between particular dates.



## 3.0 Catalogue



### 3.1 Cataloguing

Cataloguing is the most important module of the LMS from the point of view of retrieval of information. Retrieval of accurate/correct information depends upon how much care was taken while feeding accurate bibliographic data. Please ensure you follow international standards (like AACR) for field values and selection of keywords, subject-headings etc. SOUL uses MARC21 format to create records for the resources. MARC format will help us exchange information to and from other databases. MARC format supports several data field. Depending upon the size of the library and user-needs, you may choose selected important fields for your database. SOUL allows you to import data in MARC21 format too. This will also help you in saving data-entry effort and maintain accuracy (MARC records can be downloaded from LC (Library of Congress), IndCat (INFLIBNET Centre's Union database) or other OPACs for most of the foreign publications) – the mechanism is discussed later in this section.

The logical step after accessioning is to catalogue the documents received from the suppliers. There are two ways to technically process these resources - one is to Import MARC records from other OPACs available from well-known National Libraries like Library of Congress or IndCat (INFLIBNET). You only will have to check accuracy of the imported data and may have to customise certain field-values to your needs (like key-terms, price, ISBN – which might be of international/foreign edition, in few cases Class Numbers to suit local users need, etc) before it becomes a part of SOUL database. The second is to manually input all the necessary data elements into appropriate fields of the options available.

You may remember that under Administration Module, you have created necessary data-entry templates needed for your library (you may use readily available MARC template with all the fields or the one customised for your library). Be consistent in using either of them.

To create and use templates, some in-depth knowledge of MARC21 format fields and its values is needed. You are used to simple rules of cataloguing, and choose few crucial bibliographical details (like Author (s), Title, Edition, Publisher, Year, Pagination, ISBN, Subject Terms, Accession No., Collection Code etc). But please remember, to exploit advantages of automation, you can learn importance of all MARC fields and feed necessary information in the designated places.

Only trained staff should be used for cataloguing modules data-entry function. Efficiency of retrieval from the database is directly proportional to the strict adherence to the international standards observed.

SOUL has a powerful and versatile search capabilities to search the database – with almost all the permutation, combinations of the fields to be searched with Boolean logic under Advanced Search.

Let us know how to use Pre-defined Data Entry Templates provided by the SOUL. If you are going to use 'Template Based Data Entry', please ensure you are well versed with all the MARC21 fields and have experience in handling values for all the tags – You may like to refer to some of the examples screen-shots shown under 'Data Operation'. Following topics are covered under this module:

### Cataloguing

- κ Titles in Process
- κ Data Operation

### Import/Export

- κ Import from MARC
- κ Export to MARC
- κ CCF to MARC
- κ Add Accession No. To Imported Data
- κ MARCXML to SOUL

User Services

- κ Current Awareness      κ Bibliographic Service

Reports

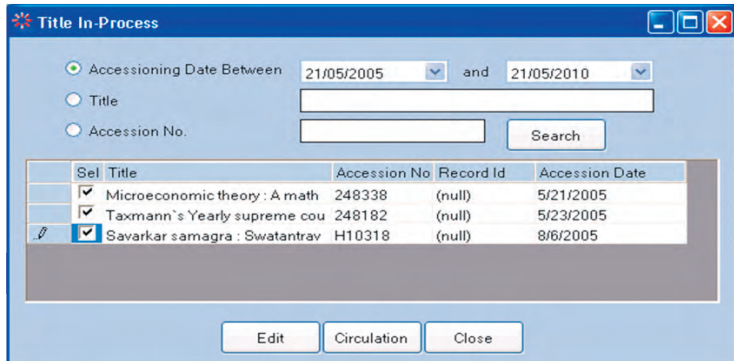
- κ Basic                              κ Advanced
- κ Spine-Label                  κ Book-card

3.1.1 Title-in-Process

(Please ensure you are familiar with MARC21 Tags and MARC Templates)



The titles, which have been accessioned earlier, will appear under this option. Click 'Titles-in-process' icon on the top-menu-bar



Select the titles you wish to catalogue – and click 'Edit'. Window with 'Predefined Data Entry Template' will open. Feed missing information accurately, if required correct the details like title/author, edition etc. Feed Location (if different than Main Library – i.e. Branch/Department Library, Collection (Lending, Reference, Special), Feed Classification Number, Book No. Click 'Optional Entry' from the top-left menu bar. Here you will be able to feed all other relevant information about the title

– assign subject keywords relevant to the item and 'Save'. 'Record Saved' pop-up message will appear.

To have more explanation on this operation, please refer 'Predefined Date Entry' using book template under 'Data Operation'.

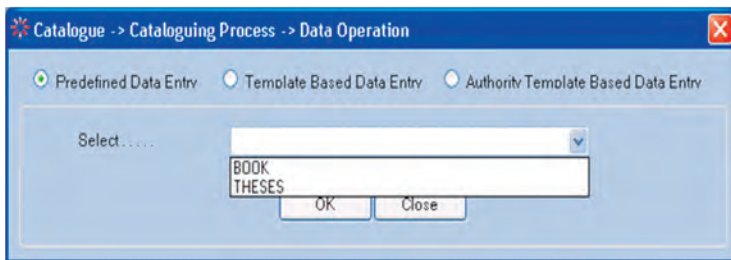
Important After editing record through “Title in Process” option, Please click “Circulation” button to make the item ready for circulation.

After editing record through “Title in Process” option, Please click “Circulation” button to make the item ready for circulation.

### 3.1.2 Data Operation

(Please ensure you are familiar with MARC21 tags and templates, it is also being requested to refer annexure for details or follow the guidelines given at <http://www.loc.gov/marc>)

Select 'Data Operation' option when you wish to feed data using 'Predefined Data Entry', 'Template Based Data Entry' or 'Authority Template Based Data Entry'. This option allows you to feed information in all the defined MARC fields and sub-fields (Tags).



Here you have options to create new record or edit the existing ones. Following pop-up window is self-explanatory to understand 'Edit Records' option, by choosing either Record ID, Range of Records, Accession No., User Name, Dates from to, as well as you will be able to Search the records with various parameters available from OPAC.

## Entering Leader and Fixed Field

As explained in Administration Module leader and fixed fields are necessary elements for any record in MARC21 format, one can choose leader/fixed fields from predefined template by exploring the combo-box and choosing right type of document, If you want to modify leader/fixed fields specifically for the record you are entering please choose modify button and select appropriate values, please note that the changes done will have effect only in current record which you are creating.

## Entering Title and Edition Statement

Before entering the title statement fill in the indicators. For title first indicator suggests whether it is an added entry or not, where as second indicator is for non-filing characters, choose appropriate values as per your record. You can enter 'Title', 'Remainder of Title' and 'Statement of Responsibility' as shown in screen above. There is also provision to enter 'Edition' and 'Remainder of Edition Statement'.

## Entering Contributors

Contributors are the persons/organisations involved in creation of content. Contributors of content may be Person, Corporate Body (Institutions), Meeting etc.

Please note that, for any document there will be only one main entry which will be saved as 1XX tag. Other contributors related with the document needs to be entered as “Added Entry”, if you want to have the contributor as added entry please tick “Added Entry” Check box which will be saved as 7XX tag of MARC Record.

## Personal Name

The screenshot shows the 'Personal Name(100)' form. It includes fields for 'Personal Name(100700)' with a dropdown set to '1', 'Personal name \$a' containing 'Raymond, George Lansing', 'Relator term \$c', 'Date associated with a name \$d', and 'Fuller form of name \$g'. There is an 'Added Entry' checkbox.

First indicator in 'Personal Name' suggests type of personal name entry element, where as second indicator is usually undefined, choose the appropriate values and enter 'Personal Name' according to the recall value of the name, The filed “Relator Term” generally is for role of contributor, There is also provision to enter 'Date Associated With Name' and “Fuller Form of Name”.

## Corporate Name

The screenshot shows the 'Corporate Name(110)' form. It includes fields for 'Corporate Name(110710)' with a dropdown set to '0', 'Corporate name \$a' containing 'INFLIBNET Centre', 'Analytical entry \$b' set to '2', 'Subordinate unit \$b' containing 'Unit Name', 'Number of part/section/meeting \$c', 'Location of meeting \$c', 'Relator term \$c', 'Date of meeting or treaty signing \$d', 'Date', and 'Misc. information \$g'. There is an 'Added Entry' checkbox.

First indicator in 'Corporate Name' suggests type of corporate name entry element, where as second indicator is undefined, choose the appropriate values. As indicated in screen shot above software have provision for entering 'Corporate Name'. If the document is related to some meeting etc, one can enter 'Number of Part/Section/Meeting' as well as 'Location' in the field provided. There are also provisions to enter 'Subordinate Unit' of corporate, 'Date of Meeting' and other miscellaneous information describing corporate contributor.



## Meeting Name

Entering contributor as meeting is same as corporate name, the only difference is, instead of 'Corporate Name' one has to enter 'Meeting Name'.

## Uniform Name

The first indicator suggests non-filing character where as second indicator is undefined. As displayed in above screen shot, one can enter 'Uniform Title', 'Medium of Document', 'Number of part/section of work', 'Form subheading', and 'Date of a work' pertaining to the document.

## Entering Publisher Information

Publisher can be entered as displayed in following screen shot.

Software facilitates you to add country, Place and Name of Publisher along with publication date. Please note that after entering few characters publisher list will get populated from vendors database once have created through 'Acquisition Master'

## Entering Language, ISBN and Class no

Unique details related to document eg. Language, ISBN and Class No can be entered as shown in screen shot below.

Please note that the language entered here will be reflected in multiple tags including fixed field of your MARC record.

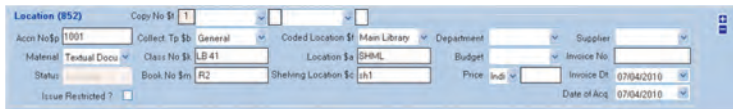
### Entering Physical Description



According to MARC standard, physical attributes of document needs to be entered in tag 3XX. Software gives you provisions for entering Pagination, Illustrations, Dimensions and Accompanying Materials as shown in screen shot above.

### Entering Location

According to MARC standard tag 852 is being used for holding information. In SOUL 2.0, this tag has been modified to address local requirements of the library.



As displayed in above screen shot, as you repeat the tag by clicking '+', system generates new copy number itself, along with all possible default values except “Accession No” The first indicator specifies the shelving scheme and the second indicator indicates shelving order. Choose appropriate values according to your requirement.

In “Accession No” field one can enter accession number, please note that the accession number must be unique. Field “Material” indicates physical type of material of the document; values reflected in combo box are the values entered as “Physical Media” in General Masters of Administration Menu. You will also be able to see the status of that accession number, user is not allowed to modify the status as it affects stability of transaction system.

One can also specify collection type of the document using “Collection Tp” filed. Please note that “Material” and “Collection Tp” are also bound with user 'Category Privileges' and play pivotal role in 'Circulation'.

The “Class No” field denotes the shelving class number of the document, along with 'Book No'. The values in “Coded Location” can be either main library or other department libraries. The 'Location' field can be broader location/section within the library. “Shelving Location” represents either shelf number or rack number or combination of both.

Other details like “Department”, “Budget”, “Price”, ”Supplier”, “Invoice No”, “Invoice Date” and “Date of Acquisition” can be entered in respective fields as shown above.

If one wants to restrict issue of specific copy bearing valid accession number that can be done by putting a tick mark against “Issue Restricted” check box.

### Entering items with Multi Series

To enter records with multi series information, click the tick mark 'Multi Series' and then Click on the button 'Add Series', you will get data entry fields as shown in the screen shot given below:

Here one can enter "Series Statement", "Volume Designator" and "ISSN Number", Enter requisite fields and click OK button.

### Attaching Document with Record

SOUL 2.0 features attachment of an external file with the record. This file can be a pdf, doc, ppt or any other format; the attached document will appear under "View Attachment" link of searched record under OPAC.

To attach any document click on “Select File”, you will be prompted with a file browser window, in which one can select the desired file. At click of ‘Save’ in main data entry screen, the attached file will be uploaded to database.

### Optional Fields Entering Other Titles (Varying form of Title)

If your record contains other types of titles apart from main title, one can enter using this option. This field can accommodate Portion of title, Parallel title, Distinctive title, Other title, Cover title, Added title, page title, Caption title, Running title, Spine title etc. You can choose type of title by choosing appropriate value of second indicator, where as first indicator acts as Note/added entry controller.

Varying form of title (248) Note, no add: 0 Portion of title: 0

Display text \$: Panel title

Title proper/short title \$: Welcome to big Wyoming

Remainder of title \$: Rem. Title

Number of part/iec of work \$:

Name of part/iec of work \$:

As shown in above screen, one can enter “Display Text”, “Title Proper/Short Title”, “Reminder of Title”, “Number of Specific Work” and “Name of Specific work”.

### Entering Subject Added Entries

SOUL 2.0 has feature of rendering subject headings according to the various schemes under the number of fields available in 6XX tag of MARC. However, if any library wants to render keywords instead of subject headings according any schemes they can use tag 653 (Uncontrolled Term) as given in following screen shot.

Subject Added Entry (653)

Personal Name(600) Uncontrolled Term(653) Corporate Name(610) Meeting Name(611) Uniform Title(630) Chronological Term(648) Topical

Uncontrolled Term (653) \$: Education Theory and practice

### Entering URL for Electronic Item

Using this field one can catalogue electronic resources by providing URL or the resource. The print document having electronic location can also be catalogued as shown in following screen shot.

URL (656) \$u HTTP Resource http://www.inflibnet.ac.in/

Note: Please enter full URL (eg. http://...)

Please note that while entering URL in this field, enter fully qualified URL specifying the protocol (i.e. http://, https://, ftp: etc) which will enable user to directly access that resource by clicking in OPAC.

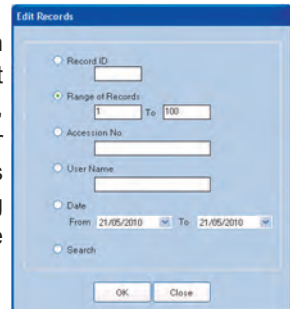
## Entering Various Notes



Any information which needs to be provided to the users may be rendered under any of these tags.

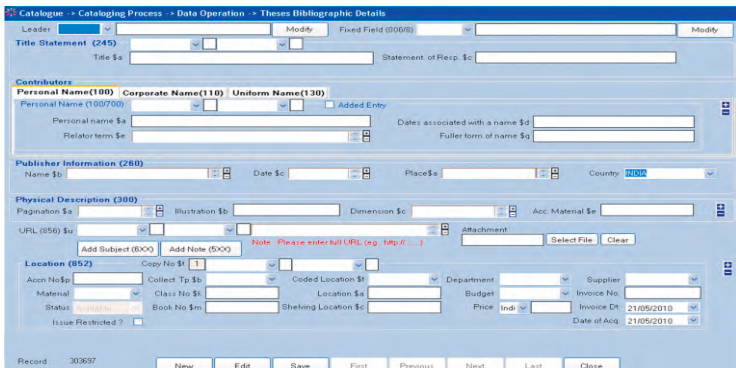
## Editing Records

For editing catalogue records one can have multiple choices. User can edit records by Record ID, Range of Records, A particular accession number, By User Name, Range of Date Entered as well as by searching through OPAC by clicking 'Search' radio button. Please choose appropriate option to edit the record.



## Pre Defined Data Entry (Theses)

SOUL 2.0 facilitates user to enter theses in specifically designed data entry screen as shown below:



Most of the fields are same as explained earlier, One can use Personal Name field (100) for entering the name of the researcher and personal name field 700 may be used for 'Guide' of theses, where as role of the persons (e.g. Guide/Research) may be rendered in corresponding "Relator Term" subfield.

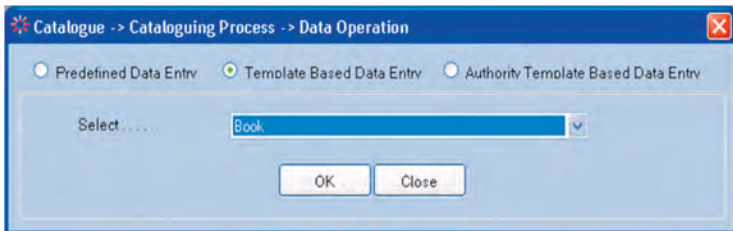
Name of the Research Granting Institute will be rendered in "Corporate Name field" (710).

Abstract and type of degree should appear in corresponding fields of Note Section, which can be rendered by clicking "Add Note (5XX)" button.

### Template Based Data Entry

Template based data entry enables you to enter bibliographic data as per template created by user. Please make sure that you have created data entry template as per your choice using Administration Module.

To enter data in user created template, please choose "Data Operation", Click on 'Template Based Data Entry' option and choose the template which you have created. Please note that SOUL software has the default pre-defined templates for entering books, serials and theses.



After clicking OK button you will get data entry screen as defined in your template.

## Authority Template Based Data Entry

There is similar procedure to create data base for authority file as explained above, Authority database created here will get reflected in pre-defined data entry sheet.

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Records' dialog box in the SOUL 2.0 software. The dialog box has the following options:

- Record ID: [ ]
- Range of Records: [ ] To [ ]
- Accession No.: [ ]
- User Name: [ ]
- Date: From [ 21/05/2010 ] To [ 21/05/2010 ]
- Search: [ ]

The main window shows the following fields:

- Leader: Book: nam a22 4s 4500 Modify Fixed Field (008/6) Books: recalabn Issa c Modify
- Country: India Attachment: Select File Clear
- Language: English
- International Standard Book Number (NR): a International Standard Book Number (NR)
- Main Entry: Personal Name (NR): a Personal name (NR)
- Title Statement (NR): a Title (NR)
- Publication, Distribution, Etc. (NR): a Place of publication, distribution, etc. (R) b Name of publisher, distributor, etc. (R) c Date of publication, distribution, etc. (R)
- Location (852): Copy No \$1 [ ] No information [ ] No info [ ]
- Accon No \$0: 001 Collect To \$0 Reference [ ] Coded [ ]
- Material: Textual Docu [ ] Cls: No \$1 32
- Status: Book No \$m [ ] Shelving Location \$c [ ] Price Ind: [ ] Invoice Dt: 21/05/2010
- Issue Restricted? [ ] Date of Acq: 21/05/2010
- Record ID: 30367 Total No. of Copies: 420954

Following are typical examples of the various data-elements, which need to be put against the respective tags (fields & sub-fields) in the MARC record of a title. Please be consistent in using punctuation, capitalization based on International Standard Cataloguing Rules (like AACR). Please also refer to MARC21 Standards in the Appendix of the User-Guide.

In Nutshell, To Add, select 'New' from the Menu. Fill up appropriate details and 'Save'. Remember to note down 'Record ID' for future use.

To Modify, select 'Edit' and fill-up appropriate details like Record ID, Range of Records, Accession No., Username, Date range or search specific title to edit, in the pop-up window and 'Save' to effect the changes or 'Close' to ignore the changes.

To Delete, select 'Edit', find requisite record through pop-up window

and click 'Delete' - SOUL will ask you to confirm deletion. Only user with superuser privileges can perform this operation.

### 3.2 Import/Export

Import/Export module allows you to

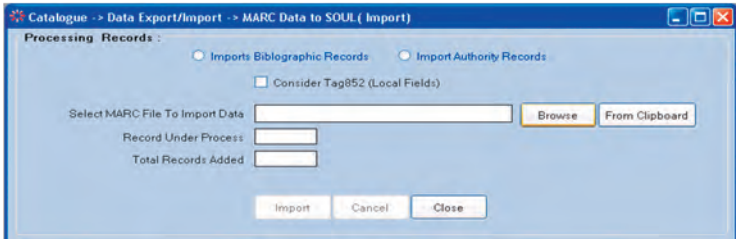
1. Import from MARC (data downloaded from various sites/files obtained from the publishers)
2. Export SOUL records to MARC
3. Convert CCF (Common Communication Format) records into MARC format
4. Import MARCXML data into SOUL
5. Add Accession Numbers to Imported Data

Before you select 'Import from MARC' option – please ensure downloaded MARC records are available on your machine (with appropriate directory path and the file name).

#### 3.2.1 Import from MARC

User can import MARC records for bibliography as well as authority files. Any standard MARC file containing valid records can be imported to your database.

Location Shelf Number, Floor, Wing etc in the Main Library or the location other than Main Library in the sub-fields allocated to each



#### Tag852

MARC records allow you to add local information like Collection Codes (Lending, Reference, Special, and Restricted Access etc), Item



identifier. In normal cases you will NOT use these fields for importing data – as you will feed information locally. Only in the cases where all the elements are relevant to our database, tick the box provided against consider Tag852, else keep it blank.

### Select MARC File to Import Data

You can import data either from a stored file (use Browse option to locate the file) or 'From Clipboard'.

Using 'Browse' Option

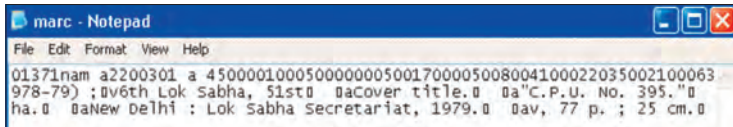


Select/feed path for the specific MARC file and click on 'Import' button.

Using 'From Clipboard' Option



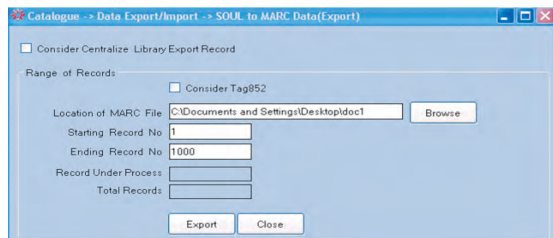
Open the file containing MARC records, select all the records using Edit > Select All option (or CTRL + A), copy all the records using Edit > Copy (Or CTRL + C), so all the records will be copied to your clip board.



Now click on 'From Clipboard' button and then click 'Import'. Records from the specified file will be added to the database mentioning no. of records under process and total records added (Along with Records Identification Number(s)).

### 3.2.2 Export SOUL records to MARC

This option will export your bibliography to MARC 21 format.



Tick appropriate boxes (if applicable), define the path and filename (remember to select .txt extension) and feed range of Record No(s) to be exported. Records will be exported into MARC format in a file mentioned in the path.

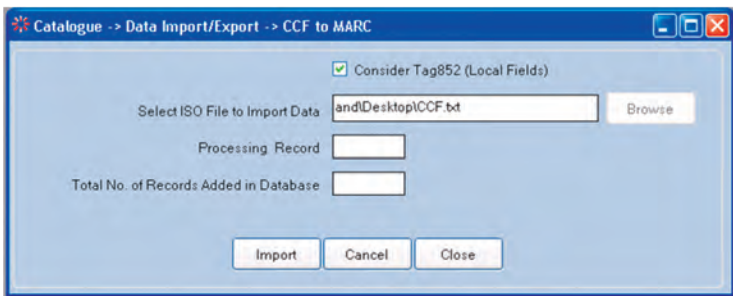
SOUL provides another option if you want to export selective records for larger library setups where acquisition is centralized, and after procurement items are distributed to various branch libraries. To do this please tick on “Consider Centralised Library Export Record”. On clicking this, the following screen shot will appear:



Now, if you want to export only those records that are located in main library (Or any other library: As per “Coded Location” Field of that record) and those records were created between specific dates, enter those parameters to export selected records.

### 3.2.3 CCF to MARC (SOUL 2.0)

You can also import CCF records into MARC format. Process is similar to Import from MARC. To perform this operation click on 'CCF to MARC' from main menu, you will get following screen.



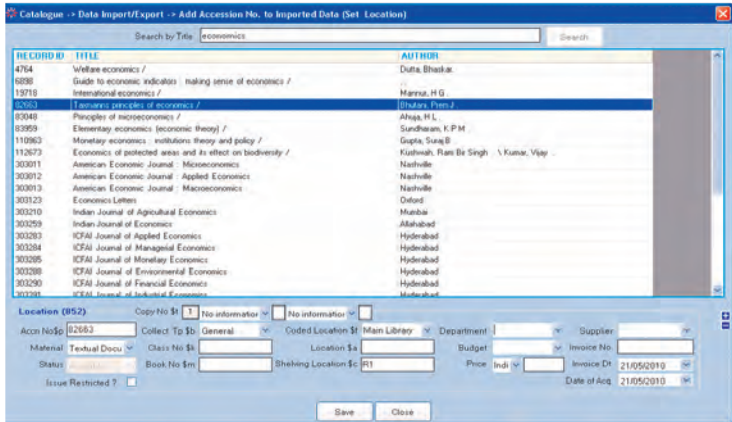
Select the ISO file from which records have to be converted into MARC format and click on 'Import' button to import CCF records to SOUL database.

### 3.2.4 MARCXML to SOUL

Process is the same as Import from MARC as mentioned before. Select the MARCXML file from which records have to be converted into MARC format and brought into SOUL Database. You will have a choice whether you want to import

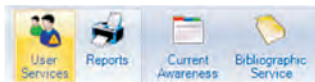
### 3.2.5 Add Accession Number to the Imported Record

SOUL allows you to assign Accession Numbers and also other 'Tag852' information to all the records added to the database to save time on editing individual records – please note that the status of all these records by default remains 'Available'.

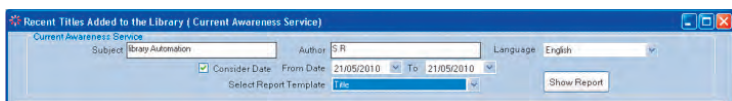


Search titles by giving 'keyword(s)' or complete title – highlight the title – feed relevant Tag852 details as explained earlier and click on 'Save'.

## 3.3 User Services



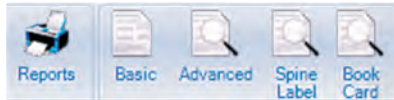
### 3.3.1 Current Awareness / Bibliographic Service



In principle, 'Current Awareness Service' and 'Bibliographic Service' are the same – while CAS is generated periodically, Bibliographic Service is created 'On Demand'.

Select appropriate options and provide filters if needed and generate the report. You will be able to save the report (in .pdf format/Excel), print it—and also send it by email to the users.

### 3.4 Reports

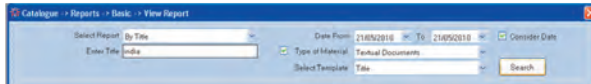


You may recall that, Report Definitions of these reports are set in Administration->Catalogue Master->Report Templates.

#### 3.4.1 Basic Report

This Report is with limited number of fields with standard filters as follows:

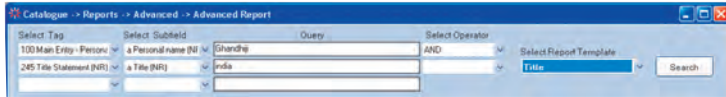
- |                                    |                            |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>By Class Number</b>             | <b>By Subject Heading</b>  |
| <b>By Titles</b>                   | <b>Recent Titles</b>       |
| <b>By Collection Type</b>          | <b>By Department</b>       |
| <b>By Language</b>                 | <b>By Location</b>         |
| <b>By Shelving Location</b>        | <b>By Accession Number</b> |
| <b>By Accession Number (Range)</b> | <b>By User name</b>        |
| <b>By Record ID</b>                |                            |



You are requested to enter appropriate parameters and filters, as well as select the desired template and click on search button to get the report.

#### 3.4.2 Advance Report

Allows you to use boolean operators by selecting requisite MARC fields, and the sub-fields too. There are good numbers of filters to limit your search based on user needs:



### 3.4.3 Spine Labels / Barcode

The report design definitions of all the above can be checked/edited. Report templates with required specifications (size of the labels, margins) are available at System Settings > Label Settings under Administration Option. Ensure that they match the required Print-page size, columns, etc.

Select the report criteria from the following options :

- By Class Number**
- By Titles**
- By Language**
- By Shelving Location**
- By Accession Number (Prefix)**
- By Accession Number (Range)**
- By Record ID**
- By Subject Heading**
- By Collection Type**
- By Location**
- By Accession Numbers (Values)**

### 3.4.4 Book Card

The report design definitions of all the above can be checked/edited. Report templates with required specifications (size of the labels, margins) are available at System Settings > Label Settings under Administration Option. Ensure that they match the required Print-page size, columns, etc.

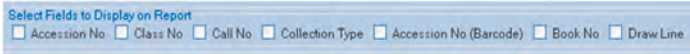
Report can be generated by the following parameters:

- By Class Number**
- By Titles**
- By Language**
- By Shelving Location**
- By Accession Number (Prefix)**
- By Accession Number (Range)**
- By Record ID**
- By Subject Heading**
- By Collection Type**
- By Location**
- By Accession Numbers (Values)**

Select the search criteria, title-mark the fields which you wish to display on the report and then click "Search". User will be able to save, print and send email of generated report.

One can enter comma separated values of accession number while generating report by “Accession Numbers(Values)”. The sequence in ticking the boxes decides the placement of the field in the report. User can generate the book-cards with different page size and margins.

Select the appropriate one and generate labels. Tick-mark the fields you wish to accommodate on each label or a barcode sticker and click ‘Search’.



You will be able to save, print and send email of the generated report. One can enter comma separated values of accession number while generating report by “Accession Numbers (Values)”.

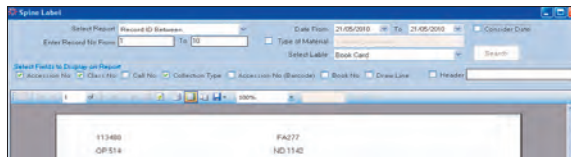
A very useful facility is provided here by SOUL. All the reports under this option have common information but applications or the page-sizes are different. The sequence in ticking the boxes decides the placement of the field in the report, e.g. in the Spine Label if we want to print labels in following format:

REF	(Collection Code)
823.91	(Class-no.)
CHR	(Book No. i.e. Author Mark)
00010G	(Accession No.)

Then tick the boxes in the following sequence, i.e.

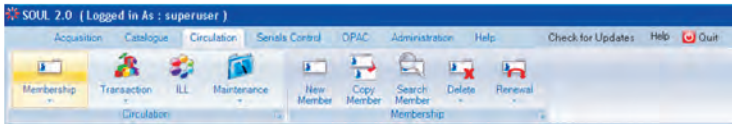
Collection Type	... followed by
Class No.	... followed by
Book No.(Author Mark)	... followed by
Accession No.	... followed by

This will generate the Report as shown below;





## 4.0 Circulation



The Circulation Module allows us to create/edit/delete/search User records, renew membership and also establish relationship between the user and resources—by creating transaction Records (Issue/Return/Renew), Reserve the Item(s), issue the items on ILL and get number of routine reports and some management reports.

### 4.1 Membership

This module deals with all operation related to library members, i.e. creation, deletion and modification of members

#### 4.1.1 New Member

Select Add to create new membership record the drop down will be appearing for selecting Category, Institute, Departments and Course/Designation which has been created earlier under Administration Module of Circulation. Select appropriately and proceed.

**New Member**

Academic Information  
 Category: [Dropdown] Institute: [Dropdown] Department: [Dropdown] Course/Designation: [Dropdown]

Personal Information  
 Surname: Patel Status: Active  
 Forename: Yatik Gender: Male  
 Birthdate: 11/14/1973 Year of Joining: 2010 Member Type: General  
 Member Code: 189935100001 Member ID: pel001

Payment Information  
 Deposit Amount: 1500.00 Receipt No.: 0 Receipt Date: 2/18/2009  
 Membership Amount: 0.00 Receipt No.: 0 Receipt Date: 11/14/2008  
 Maximum Due Amount: 0.00 Effective Date: 21/05/2011 Card Exp. Date: 4/ 8/2048

Remark: [Text Field]

Buttons: Add, Update, Save, Cancel, Search, Exit, First, Previous, Next, Last

After filling in academic information, proceed towards personal information tab, where you can feed personal details of user, e.g. name, date of birth etc. If a member status is selected as active, then only member will be allowed to do any transaction. You may also choose member type, as it is gets reflected in book bank issues for member. All transaction can be done using 'Member ID' which should be unique. The ID can be unique roll number, GR number or employee ID.

After feeding in personal details, feed in contact information, where you can place address details of member.

Personal information | Contact Information | Picture | Guarantor Information(Optional)

Permanent Address: Number, Street address  
City: Ahmedabad PIN: 380009 Phone: 000000  
 Present Address is same as Permanent Address

Present Address: Number, Street address  
City: Ahmedabad PIN: 380009 Phone: 000000  
Email:

If you want to put member's photograph, then click on picture tab and upload member's photograph which you should have already scanned. To enter guarantor information please choose guarantor tab, If the guarantor is already member of your library then after entering guarantor's member id, all relevant information about the guarantor will be retrieved. Please note that picture and guarantor information are optional.

After feeding in the contact details, you are also requested to enter payment information as displayed in previous screen shot. Please note that if you have specified category end date in category master, it will be reflected here.

After feeding in entire details of member, press 'Save'. System generated new membership code will appear in the pop-up box, with a prompt to confirm it. 'New Member has been Inserted' message will appear on the confirmation.

You can search the records through various filters like Code, Name, Department, Designation, Entry date, Category etc.



Member Search  
Code: 1899

Select	Member Code	MemberName	Institute Name	Department Name	Category	Designation	Branch Description
<input type="checkbox"/>	189935050001	PRATIK PANDYA	Smt. Hansa Mehta	University Library/	Lib. Technical	Sta	Technical Staff
<input type="checkbox"/>	189935050002	HITESH CHAUHA	Smt. Hansa Mehta	University Library/	Lib. Technical	Sta	Technical Staff
<input type="checkbox"/>	189935050003	JESAL PATEL	Smt. Hansa Mehta	University Library/	Lib. Technical	Sta	Technical Staff
<input type="checkbox"/>	189935050004	VINDU CHANDRA	Smt. Hansa Mehta	University Library/	Lib. Technical	Sta	Technical Staff
<input type="checkbox"/>	189935050005	PRAKASH SHAH	Smt. Hansa Mehta	University Library/	Lib. Technical	Sta	Technical Staff
<input type="checkbox"/>	189935050006	CHANDRAKANT	Smt. Hansa Mehta	University Library/	Lib. Technical	Sta	Technical Staff
<input type="checkbox"/>	189935050007	JANVIKA CHUDG	Smt. Hansa Mehta	University Library/	Lib. Technical	Sta	Technical Staff
<input type="checkbox"/>	189935050008	NILESH JOSHI	Smt. Hansa Mehta	University Library/	Lib. Technical	Sta	Technical Staff
<input type="checkbox"/>	189935050009	MONA PARMAR	Smt. Hansa Mehta	University Library/	Lib. Technical	Sta	Technical Staff
<input type="checkbox"/>	189935050010	JOSEPH CELINE	Smt. Hansa Mehta	University Library/	Lib. Technical	Sta	Technical Staff
<input type="checkbox"/>	189935050011	CHARULATA AMI	Smt. Hansa Mehta	University Library/	Lib. Technical	Sta	Technical Staff
<input type="checkbox"/>	189935070001	YOGENDRAKUM	Smt. Hansa Mehta	University Library/	Lib. Technical	Sta	Technical Staff
<input type="checkbox"/>	189935100001	Yatrik Patel	Smt. Hansa Mehta	University Library/	Lib. Technical	Sta	Technical Staff

To update any member's detail select the member and click on 'Show Member' to edit.

### 4.1.2 Copy Member

You may copy an existing membership record and same it with new membership code. This option is useful when a library member is changing credentials by either shifting to another department or joining a new course.

To perform this operation, select Copy Member. Feed Member ID/Code. Details will appear – Select 'Update' – correct information, data, valid till date etc appropriately – and click 'Save'. Pop-up box with new membership code will appear. Select 'Yes' to confirm.

**Copy Member**


Enter Member Code:

**Member details**

Member Name: Yatrik Patel      Member Code: 189935100001

Department: University Library/Faculty Library      Current Due: 0

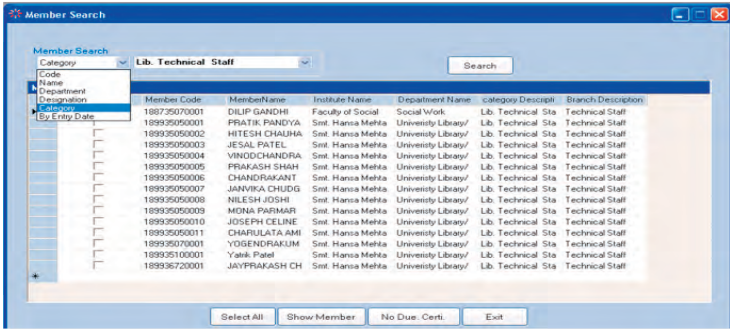
Category: Lib. Technical Staff



After doing this you will be able to change his academic details, and rest of the process is same as in case of creating new member.

### 4.1.3 Search Member

You can search the Membership Records by choosing the option 'Search'. There are various filters to limit the search-results. These filters are Code, Name, Department, Designation, Entry date, Category.

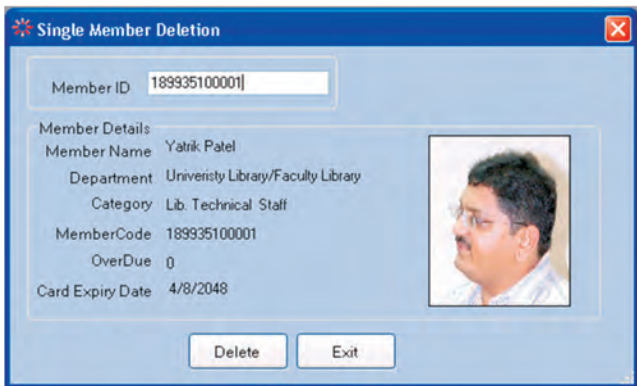


Once the member list is retrieved according to your search criteria, one can update the member by selecting the member and pressing 'Show Member' button, or directly issue 'No-Due Certificate' by pressing “No Due Certi” button.

#### 4.1.4 Delete Member

There are two options for deleting membership record, you can either delete single member or delete entire group of members as mentioned below:

#### Single Member Deletion



Select the option, feed Membership ID or Member Code and press <Enter>. Membership details will appear in the box – after cross-checking, you can delete the record.

## Group Membership Deletion

To delete entire group of member, click option “Group”. A window will appear as shown below, in this screen you need to enter Institute details, Department, Category, Course Designation and Entry Date Range after filling all information click on 'GO' button, list of members pertaining to chosen group will appear. To delete them select the member and press “Delete Group” button.

Select	Member CD	MemberName	Effective Date	Card Expiry
<input type="checkbox"/>	189935100001	Yatrik Patel	5/21/2010 12:	4/8/2048 12:0

Please note that using this option, you can issue No-Due Certificate or, suspend member temporarily by clicking appropriate button.

### 4.1.5 Renewal

Same as deletion, membership renewal can be done using two alternatives, single member and group options.

If you wish to Renew a single membership – feed Membership ID in the box provided and press <Enter> - Membership details will appear with 'Renewal' button at the bottom menu bar. Input renewal date, and click 'Renewal' button the Membership for further stipulated period.

To renew Group of Members, filter criteria are same as “Group Deletion”.

Select	Member CD	MemberName	Effective Date	Card Expiry
<input type="checkbox"/>	189935100001	Yatrik Patel	5/21/2010 12:	4/8/2048 12:0

Filter out group of members and enter renewal date as “Valid upto”, select the members you want to renew and click on “Renewal Group” button.

#### 4.1.6 No dues Certificate

You can issue no- dues certificate to Members in bulk. You have to select institute and then after select department of selected institute and select corresponding category and course/designation within department. Select range of member's entry date. Click on 'Go' button after specifying the member group. You will get listing of members. You can select member and generate no dues Certificate.

#### 4.1.7 Member Card

In this option, user can get the member card as per customized member card template in Administration Module>Circulation Master > Customise Member Card. One can get the report with different parameters life member ID, Member code and Member Entry date. Choose the template and click “show Report”. If user want to have border on library card, then tick “Border” checkbox.

#### 4.1.8 Member Listing

In this report, you can get information of member. You can get member details using various filters like course/designation, institute,

department, category, membership starting date, membership end date, member name, member code, member entry date etc.

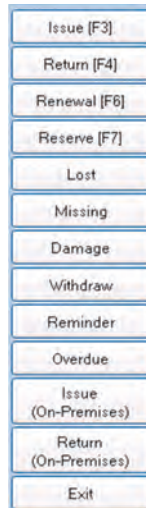
Please note that, if you select entry date between option, you can get all members who were enrolled as member during the selected period. After selecting of option, click on 'Display' button for display the report.

## 4.2 Circulation Transaction



### 4.2.1 Transaction Menu

This module enables you to do all the transactions as displayed below:



Please do remember following short-cut keys for ease of operation:

Issue	F3
Return	F4
Renew	F6
Reserve	F7

## Issuing Items [F3]

Click 'Issue' button or press 'F3' function key. Cursor will start blinking inside the Member Code/Member ID box. Scan the bar-coded membership card or feed the member ID/ code manually and press <Enter>. Membership details will appear on the screen.

After filling in membership details the cursor will blink in Accession No. box – scan the barcode of the document (or feed the number manually) and press <Enter>. Important details of the title will appear in the box below. Click '**Issue**' the document shown on the screen will get issued. If you have ticked the box against '**Print Issue Slip**' (appearing at upper top side of the screen) command will be sent to the default printer automatically. Items lent will change their status to '**Issued**'.

The screenshot displays the 'Transaction' window in the SOUL 2.0 system. It includes fields for Accession No. (1004), Member Code/Member ID (189935100001), Member Name (Yatrik Patel), Department (University Library/Faculty), Member Code (189935100001), Category (Lib. Technical), Current Due (0), and Item Issued (1). A 'Print Issue Slip' checkbox is present. Below this is a table of books with columns for Accession No., Book Status, Title, Author, Call No., Material, Issue/Retrieval, Issue Date, Due Date, and Reserve Date. The table shows three entries: 1001 (Issued), 1002 (Available), and 1004 (Available). A 'Remove Item' and 'Remove All Item(s)' button are located below the table. The 'Issued / Reserved book Details' section shows 'Issued Book Details' for Member Code 189935100001, Member Name Yatrik Patel, Department University Library/Faculty Library, Issue Date 5/21/2010, and Due Date 5/21/2011. The 'Challenges Details' section shows 'Issue Privileges Reserve' with a table for Book Name, Accession No., Issue Date, Due Date, and User Code, listing 'Fundamentals 1001' with Issue Date 5/21/2010, Due Date 5/21/2011, and User Code supervisor. On the right side, there is a vertical list of buttons: Issue [F3], Return [F4], Renewal [F6], Reserve [F7], Lost, Missing, Damage, Withdraw, Reminder, Overdue, Issue (On-Premises), Return (On-Premises), and Exit.

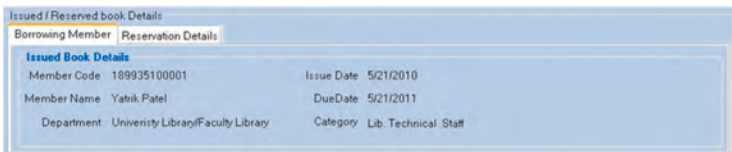
### Please note that documents can only be issued when

- I. If the membership is valid
- II. No Overdue documents
- III. Number Of items already issued are less than the maximum borrowing capacity
- IV. Member status is active (not Suspended or Cancelled or Defaulter).
- V. No-dues certificate should not be issued.

If there are more number of items to be issued then member privileges then you will be prompted to remove one or more items, individual items can be removed by pressing “Remove Item” button, if you want to clear entire list then press “Remove all items button”.

If you have chosen items with more than one status i.e. Available, Issued, Reserved etc. In that case, only 'Available' books will be issued to member.

In case if you want to see status of issued item (i.e. to whom it has been issued etc,) the borrowing member tab will display the borrower details.



Similarly, if the book is reserved one can see the details by clicking 'Reservation Details' tab.

If one wants to see member's details, the 'Privilege Details' tab on bottom will display all the book issued to that member, his privilege details and all the books reserved by that member if any.



**Return Items [F4]**

Same window is used to get the items returned. First scan or feed all the items which needs to be return. On scanning or feeding Accession No., brief details of the title will appear in the box below – after confirmation click 'Return' or press <Enter>. The items will be returned.

If the book is being returned after due date, you will be prompted for taking over due charges. If you click yes on that message a new window as reproduced below will appear:

Slip No.	1100001	Slip Date	7/21/2011
Member Code	189935100001	Accession No.	1001
Name	Yatrik Patel		
Issue Date	9/21/2010	Due Date	5/21/2011
Fine Reason	OVERDUE	Fine Amount	20.00

Buttons: Paynow, PayLater, Cancel, Print, Save

After confirming the fine amount and pressing 'Save' button, you will have two options, you can either print the fine slip, in case if the fine is to be paid some where else press 'Pay Later' button, if the fine is to be paid at circulation counter itself press 'Pay Now' button, screen reproduced below will appear:

Receipt_No	1100001	Receipt Date	7/21/2011
Slip NO.	1100001	Slip Date	7/21/2011
Member Code	189935100001	Accession NO.	1001
Name	Yatrik Patel		
Issue Date	9/21/2010	Return	5/21/2011
Fine Reason	OVERDUE	Fine Amount	20
Cheque/Draft	00	Receipt Amount	20.00
Bank Name			

Buttons: Save, Cancel, Print, Exit

This will enable to you collect the fine and print the receipt. Please note that you can collect amount equal to or less than fine amount, and rest of the fine can be settled later using "Over Due" transaction. After pressing save button you will be able to print the receipt.

## Renew Items [F6]

This is a comprehensive option. Any member is normally allowed to renew the items at least once, if the borrowed titles are not reserved/claimed by the other members. Scan/Feed accession no. of



the title to be renewed, press <Enter>. Data of the user/member will automatically appear along. Click 'Renew' to renew the item for a further stipulated period (which will be calculated automatically depending upon category of a member).

## Reserve Items [F7]

To reserve an item which has been issued to any other borrower, click reserve button. Item will be reserved only if all the copies are issued and the member is allowed to reserve book as per his/her privileges.

SRNo	MemberCode	MemberName	Department	Status	ReserveDate	HoldDate
1	189935100001	Yatrik Patel	University Library	Reserved	5/21/2010	6/5/2010

If the item has been reserved by multiple member; one can change the reservation priority by pressing 'Move Up' or 'Move Down' button, or cancel reservation by pressing "Cancel Reservation" button.

Besides Issue, Return, Renew and Reservation transaction, one can perform the following in-house maintenance transactions like:

**Lost**  
**Damage**  
**Missing**  
**Withdraw**

Select the item and press corresponding button to change the status of that item. Further process of above maintenance transactions can be carried out in "Maintenance menu".

## Reminders/Recall

If you want to generate recall/reminder notice for any issued item, select the item and press on 'Reminder' button, a letter will be generated which can be printed or e-mailed to the borrower of item (The text of reminder letter can be changed using Administration > System Settings > Letter Layout).

## Over Due

Overdue charges for any of the members are dealt here. To clear the overdue account, issue receipt, print statement etc can be handled with the help of this menu.

Member Code: 189935100001 Search

Member Code: 189935100001  
Member Name: Yank Patel

SlipNo	SlipDate	LastReceiptN	LastReceiptID	Reason	AccessionNO	DueAmount	FinalAmount
1100001	7/21/2011	1100001	7/21/2011	OVERDUE	1001	10.0000	20.0000

Receipt No: 1000001 Total Due Amount: 10,000  
Receipt Date: 5/21/2010 Receipt Amount: 10,000

Print Payment Exit

User: supervisor Date: 5/21/2010 2:13:51 PM Records: 1

To collect overdue charges from the member enter the member code/ID of the member, and press search button, you will be displayed all the amount charged against that member, to pay that amount enter receipt amount and press payment button. After doing so you will also be able to print payment receipt.

## Issue (On Premises)

On premises issue is a special transaction to provide facility to issue items within library premises or for reading room purpose, photo copying or overnight issue.

To perform this operation, select item and enter member ID/code and press 'Issue (On Premises)' button you will be prompted with following screen.

Over Night Issue On Premises Issue

Title: Fundamentals in education, art and civics

Member Code: 189935100001

Remarks:

Due Date: 5/20/2010

On Premises Time: 4:00:00 PM

Save Exit

If you choose 'Over Night Issue' option, only due date will be displayed, in case of 'On Premises Issue', you will be prompted to enter time to return the item. Choose your desired option and click on 'Save' button. The selected item will be issued.

### Return (On Premises)

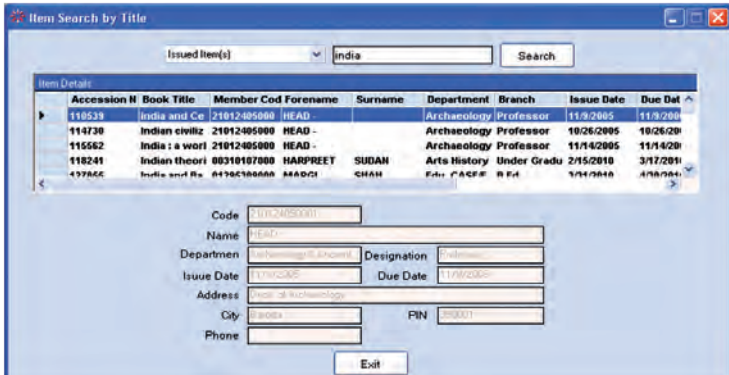
To return any item which has been issued either 'on premises' or 'overnight' just enter accession number and press return button, the item will be returned, if the item is overdue you will be prompted with fine calculation window.

### No Dues Reverse Process

There might be occasions when books will be return to the library after issue for various reasons. 'No Dues Certificate'. You can revoke 'No Dues Certificate' by searching the member, ticking the box against the record – in such cases click 'No Dues Certificate' button and “ ” message will appear. Click 'Yes' to reverse the status. Member will be able to start using the resources as usual (Only new membership code will be generated – old member ID can remain unchanged).

## 4.2.2 Search by Title

This option is useful when one want to find out contact details of borrowing member or institution of a specific title.



To search for items choose 'Issued Item(s)' or 'Items on ILL' and then enter few words of title and press search button, all the items containing your search term will be displayed, to get borrower details of a specific item, double click on title of item.

### 4.2.3 Overdue Charges

Overdue charges of any of the members are dealt through this menu; it is same as explained in 'Over Due' in 'Transactions' menu.

### 4.2.4 Book Bank Issue/ Return

This option will allow you to issue library material in bulk to any category/type of member provided they are entitled to get them. E.g. certain types of members like backward class, there is a provision to issue books up to a certain cost and number, for the whole academic year – such transactions is treated as Book Bank issues. Please ensure that requisite details against that specific type of members are filled up (Administration -> Circulation -> Membership Type). In such cases long-term book-loans are affected using this option.

**Book Bank Issue**

Member Code: 189935100001      Accession No: 1001      Due Date: 21/2010

Book Title: Fundamentals in education...      Book Price: 200

Max. Money Allow: 10000      Max. Book Allowed: 10

**Member Details**

Member Code: 189935100001      Category: Lib. Technical

Member Name: Yatik Patel      Member Type: General

Department: University Library/Faculty Library

**Issued Book Details**

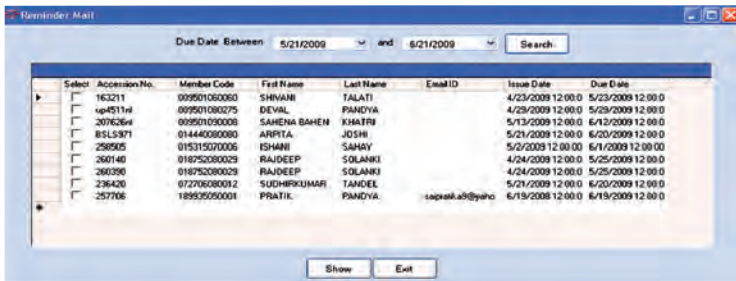
MemberCod	AccessionN	IssueDate	Price	DueDate

Issue      Return      Exit

The Book bank screen reproduced above will open and you will be able to issue books. Feed Membership Code of borrower and Accession No. of book(s). Same option is used when the books are returned at the end of Issue period.

## 4.2.5 Reminder

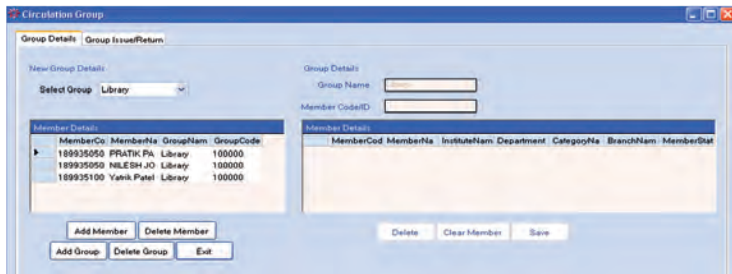
You will be able to generate reminders using this option. Due-date should be selected from the screen reproduced below.



After finding out your desired results, select the members which you want to send reminders and click on show button.

## 4.2.6 Circulation Group

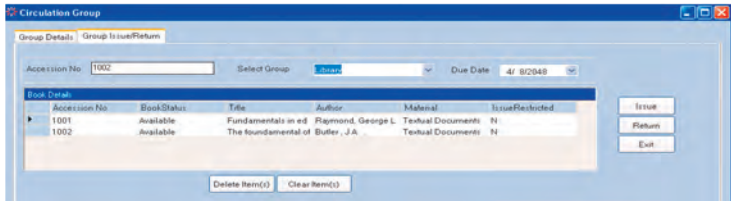
A Group-issue(s) can be exercised with the help of this option. This special options is for libraries, that issues items to a group of members rather than individual member.



First of all you need to create group of members. To create a new group, click on 'Add Group' button, enter group name and all the members who are part of that group. By default first member entered will be treated as key member of the group, after entering all the members click on save button.

If you want to add/or delete specific members of the group, choose the group highlight the name of member to be deleted and click on 'delete'. To delete entire group click on 'Delete Group' button.

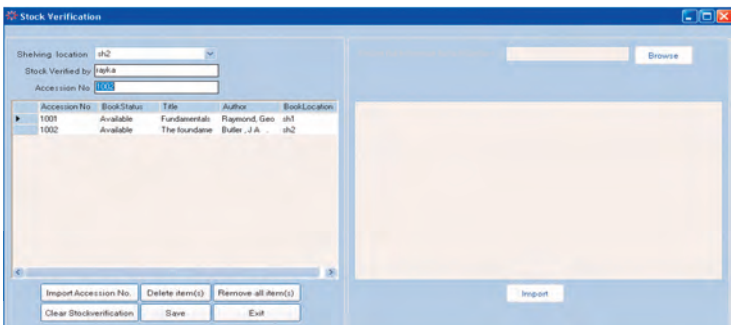
To perform issue/return transaction for the group, please choose group/issue return tab



Enter accession numbers of all the items you want to issue to a particular group, Select the specific group to which you want to issue the items, and then select the due date. By pressing issue button, similarly to return the items, enter all accession numbers and press return button.

### 4.2.7 Stock Verification

Stock verification in many libraries is an annual process. Select this option to invoke stock verification process. Considering the large collection available in the libraries, the process has been designed.



In stock verification you can verify stock using shelving location of item(s). There are two way for stock verification in first method enter accession number manually.

In second option you can directly import .csv file which contains accession number of documents whose availability has been verified. This option can be exercised by clicking on 'Imported Accession No.' button, click on 'browse' and select .csv file which you want to verify.

After selecting .csv file click on 'Import' button. You can see the list of item(s) at left side of form click on header where accession number is appearing, when you click on header you will see other list of item(s) at right side of form with title. Click on 'save' button, the imported file will be considered as verified. In case you need to clear existing verified item(s) then just click on 'Clear Stock Verification' button.

Note: for stock verification you must enter shelving location of item(s) in data-entry process. You can generate the verified annual stock of item(s). There are four type of report for verified stock.

### Mismatch Accession

In this report you can get list of item(s) which are not available in database (or not entered) e.g. you have procured the item(s) but you forgot data-entry of those item(s) but you found during stock verification.

### Mismatch Status

In this report you can get list of all those item(s) for which status is deferred in database.

### Mismatch Location

In this report you can get list of all those item(s) which are from different location. Suppose you have verified stock of Location A but original location of item(s) is Location B, so you will generate list of all item(s) which are not belong to Location A.

### Available item(s)

In this report you can get list of all those item(s) for which status is available on-shelf but they are not verified during verification.

### 4.2.8 Member Login

In many libraries, daily visits of the members need to be registered to keep track of daily footfall and members using the system. Once you invoke this option on the terminal near the entrance or on OPAC terminals of the Library, Members are supposed to scan the ID card or enter the ID Number manually and use the system.

Statistical reports can be generated from this menu option. Reports can be generated either by date, currently logged in members, or by a specific member code.

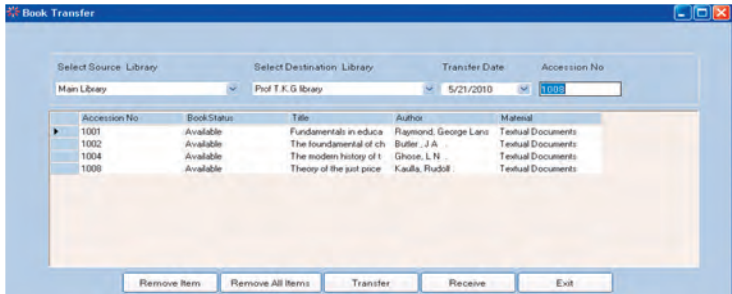
Member code	Member Name	Log-in Time	Log-out Time
189935100001	Yatrik Patel	5/21/2010 2:30:49 AM	

Printed On : 21/05/2010  
Report generated by: SOUL 2.0

### 4.2.9 Book Transfer

This option is useful in the cases where large amount of collection is transferred from main library to sub libraries (department) or vice-versa. To perform this operation, first you have to select source library (where your collection originally belongs to) and the destination library (where you want to transfer your books), enter transfer date and enter/scan accession numbers of all the items and press 'Transfer Button'.





Please note that exercising this option will change Location field of bibliography of all selected items which has been transferred to other location physically.

#### 4.2.10 Issued item(s) Over Period

One can see history of issued item(s). You can search issued item(s) by three criteria, i.e. Items issued during the specified period, member code, accession no. as well you can search item(s) of particular departmental library. After filling criteria as described above click on 'display' button.

#### 4.2.11 Item(s) Returned Over Period

You can see history of returned item(s) between specified period of return as well as you can search returned item of selected library.

#### 4.2.12 Item(s) Reserved Over Period

You can see current reserved item(s) between specified period, You have to enter period and click on 'Display' button, you can generate reserved item(s) list. You can also get reserved item(s) of particular library.

#### 4.2.13 Overdue Item List

You can generate a list of overdue items by member code, titles, and specified dates. You can also get over due item(s) list of particular library after selecting library.

#### **4.2.14 Fine Payers List**

You can see list of all member who paid fine between specified periods. You have to enter range of dates and click on 'Display' button.

#### **4.2.15 Pending Dues**

You can generate list of members with pending due You can list member using two parameters i.e. member code and dates. After filling these parameters click on 'Display' button.

#### **4.2.16 Issue On-Premises/Over Night**

You can see list of over-night issued item(s) as well as on premises issued item(s) or a combined list of two

#### **4.2.17 Group Issue Report**

You can get list of item(s) which are issued to a group. You can list item by three criteria i.e. all group ,single group, and for particular member . You can select any one parameter for getting list. After selecting any option click on 'Display' button, you will get list of Issued item(s) to Group.

#### **4.2.18 Stock Verification**

One can generate the verified annual stock of item(s). There are four type of report for verified stock.

#### **Mismatch Accession**

In this report you can get list of item(s) which are not available in database (or not entered ) e.g. you have procured the item(s) but y o u forgot date-entry of those item(s) but you found during stock verification.

### Mismatch Status

In this report you can get list of all those item(s) for which status is deferred in database.

### Mismatch Location

In this report you can get list of all those item(s) which are from different location, Suppose you have verified stock of Location A but original location of item(s) is Location B, so you will generate list of all item(s) which are not belong to Location A.

### Available Item(s)

In this report you can get list of all those item(s) for which status is available on shelf but they are not verified during verification.

#### 4.2.19 Member Log List

Using this option, you can get report on number of members who visited the library as well as how many members are available in library at a given time. You can get a list of members between a given period and by members that are currently logged in, after selecting the criteria click on 'Show' button to get list of member with their logged in and logged out time .

#### 4.3 ILL (Inter Library Loan)



### 4.3.1 Borrowing Item(s) on ILL

Steps involved in borrowing item from any external institute are

- ✦ Input item Info into 'Request' – with ILL Institution details
- ✦ Send Request Letter to ILL Institution
- ✦ Receive ILL item from the ILL Institution
- ✦ Send arrival intimation to Member.
- ✦ Issued item to the Library Member
- ✦ Send Reminder Letter to Member to return ILL Item
- ✦ Record returns of the issued item by the member
- ✦ Return ILL Item to the ILL Institution
- ✦ Generate requisite ILL reports

### Entering a New Request

For procurement of any item from external library, usually request is being done by your own library member, to enter that request use click on request, and use following form reproduced below.

The screenshot shows a web-based form for entering an ILL request. At the top, there are navigation tabs: Request, Request To Library, Receiving Items On ILL, Arrivals/Reports, Issue, Reminder to Member, Return, and Send to Library. The form fields are as follows:

- Member Code: 18993510000
- Material: Textual Documents
- Name: My exp. of T
- Title: My exp. of T
- 1st Author: M K Ghandh
- Publication Year: 1978
- 2nd Author: (empty)
- Date of Request: 06/23/2013
- Publisher: (empty)
- Library Name: SSMIT library

Below the form is a table titled "ILL Request Details":

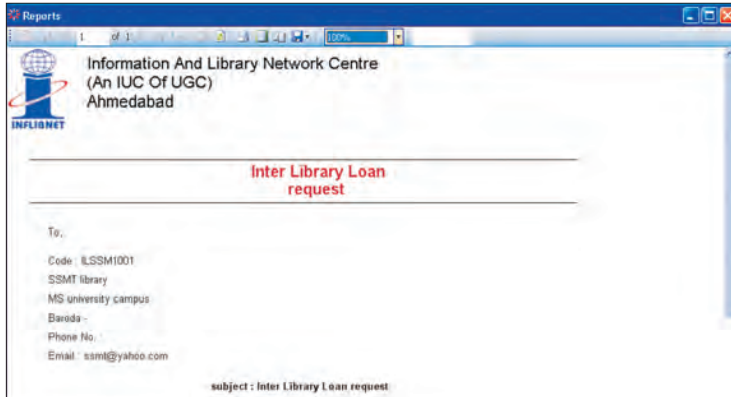
Member Co.	Media Descr	Book Title	Author1	Author2	Publisher
1899351000	Textual Doc	My exp. of T	M K Ghandh		

At the bottom of the form are buttons for Add, Update, Delete, Save, and Cancel.

After entering brief bibliographical details of item to be bought, choose external library to which ILL request needs to be sent. Please note that the lists of external libraries are those libraries which you have entered as institutional libraries which you have entered in Administration module.

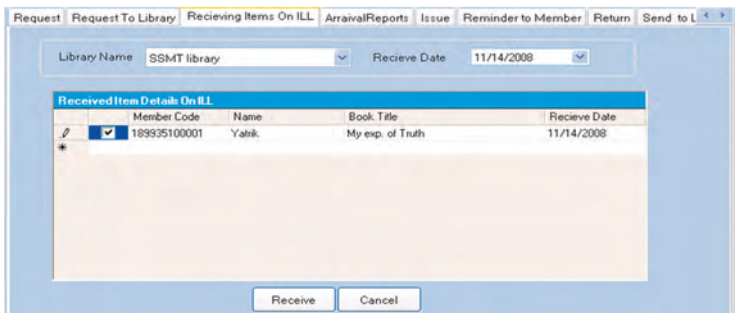
## Send Request Letter to Library

After inputting request for item(s) repaired on ILL, you need to send request letter to external library to supply item under ILL. To do this, click on 'Request to Library' tab, select the library to which you want to send request and click on 'Show' button, a request letter will be displayed as shown below containing all requested items.



## Receive ILL Item

After sending the ILL request, the external library may send you the requested item, to receive requested item, click on "Receive Items on ILL" tab you will be getting a screen as displayed below:



As soon as you choose the library, you will get list of all the items requested to that library, select the item and click on 'Receive' button to receive those item.

### Arrival intimation and Issue Item to Library Member

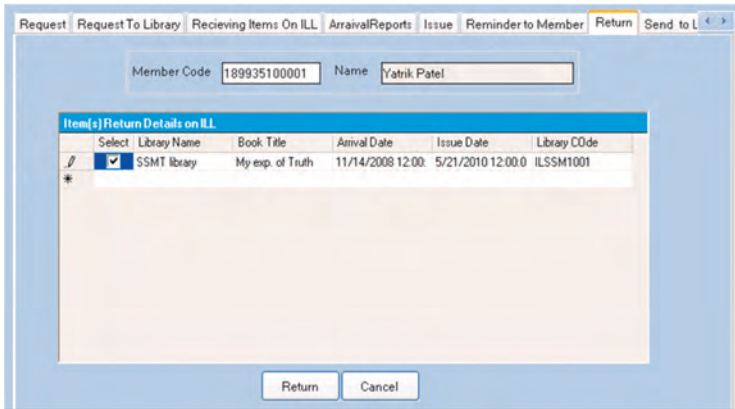
If you want to send arrival intimation to your library member, click on 'Arrival Reports' tab, where after selecting the library you can generate arrival intimation for the member.

Select	Library Name	Book Title	Arrival Date	Library Code
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SSMT library	My exp. of Truth	11/14/2008	ILSSM1001

To issue items, click on 'Issue' tab, enter the member code/ID, you will be displayed all the items requested by the member, choose item(s) you want to issue and click on 'Issue' button to lend the item(s).

### Return and Reminder Letter

To return item (which has been bought under ILL) from the member click on 'Return' tab. The screen reproduced below will be displayed

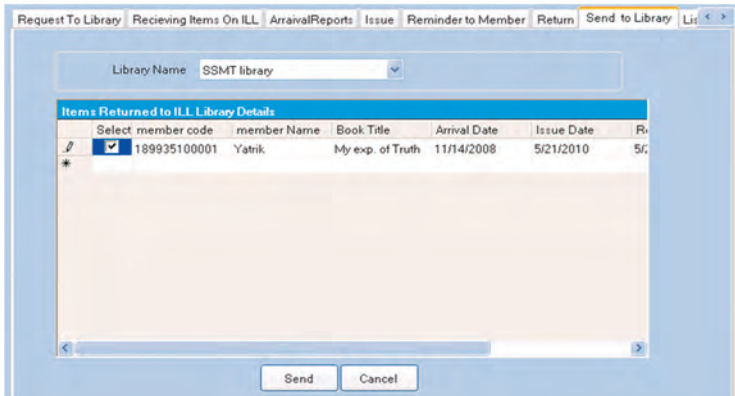


Enter member code/ID in above screen, you will get listing of all the items which has been issued to the member, select the items you want to return and click on 'Return' button.

In case if you want to generate reminder, click on 'Reminder to Member' tab, enter the member code/ID and click on 'show' button.

### Send Items Back to Parent Library

Once your member has returned the item, you may want to send it back to the library from where it was borrowed Click on 'Send to Library' tab to do so.



If you want to see the reports click on 'List ILL' button after entering the desired period, you will get listing of all ILL transaction done within that period.

### 4.3.2 Lending Item(s) on ILL

Steps involved in lending of item from your library on ILL are as follows:

- ✦ Receive a Request (from another Institute's Library)
- ✦ Find Accession No. of the requested item : Input Accession Nos. of item(s) through Send Reminder to the Institute (for overdue item(s))
- ✦ Receive items return by the borrowing library Generate requisite ILL reports

### Issue Items on ILL to External Libraries

Accession No.

Title

Library SSMT library

Reference

Request Date 5/21/2010 Sending Date 5/21/2010

ILL Item Lending Details				
Accession No.	Library Name	Request Date	Request Refe	Send Date
1001	SSMT library	5/21/2010	ILL	5/21/2010

Issue Update Save Delete Cancel Exit

Once you receive request from external library, and if you want to issue items on ILL, please click on 'Issue' tab, you will get screen reproduced below:



In this screen, If you want to issue item, first click on issue button, enter accession number of the item(s) you want to issue, Choose the borrowing library(which should have been entered as Institutional Library in Administration Module), You may also input reference number, which can be either letter number or any other communication from borrowing library. To complete the transaction, click on 'save' button.

Please note that you can issue book to ILL only if the library has given proper privileges through Administration Module.

### Reminder to Library

In case the library does not return the book(s) in time, and if you want to send a reminder to that library, please click on 'Reminder to Library' tab. Choose name of the library which want to send the reminder and click on 'Show' button, you will get a reminder letter ready with listing of all the pending items from that library.

### Return of Item sent on ILL

To return items which have been issued on ILL click on 'Return' tab, you will get the screen reproduced below:

Library: SSMT library

Select	Accession No.	Request Date	Reference	Sending Date
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1001	5/21/2010 12:00:0	ILL	5/21/2010 12:00:0

Buttons: Receive, Cancel, Exit

To return item, choose the library to whom you have issued the item(s), you will be displayed list of all sent items issued to that library, choose the item you want to return and click on 'Receive' button.

### Report on ILL Lending

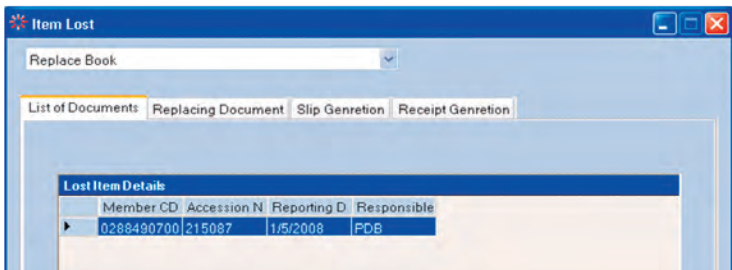
To get listing of all the items which has been sent under ILL, please choose 'Report' tab, you will be prompted to enter duration for which you want to have report, click on 'Show' button to generate report of all the items issued under ILL.

## 4.4 Maintenance

The collection of a library is generally available to all the users. It's status remains either 'available' or 'issued'. But there are situations when some of the items are either temporarily NOT available on (taken out, Binding or Damaged hence taken off the shelves for Repair). Some item(s) are permanently removed from the collection – may be Reported Lost, Withdrawn due to various reasons (like – outdated, beyond repairs, missing or lost). In such cases we have to update the status of such items. This will help users latest status of a specific item. Choose appropriate action from the menu under Maintenance and update the Status of a specific item by entering the Accession No.

### 4.4.1 Lost Item(s)

This option enables further operation on items which has been tagged as lost via 'Transaction' menu. If you click 'Lost' button of menu, you will get the screen reproduced below:



Please note that any item which has been lost by any member, there are two options available, either member can replace the item or pay correct fine.

If member wants to replace the lost item, choose 'replace book' option from combo box on top, you will also be able to see listing of all items, select the item you want to replace and then click on 'Replacing Document' tab. You will get the screen reproduced below:

Enter the reason or remarks in field labelled 'Reason' and click on replace button, this book will again be available for circulation.

If member wants to pay for the cost of lost book, please choose “Amount Recovery” option instead of 'Replace Book', select the document as explained above and choose 'Slip Generation' tab, you will get the screen reproduce below:

Enter the amount you want to recover from member and click on payment button. Now finish the process by going in to 'Receipt Generation' tab, where you can generate a receipt and complete the amount recovery transaction.

#### 4.4.2 Binding

Choose this option for sending titles for binding or for removing titles from circulation for binding.

Binding has been divided in following sub processes:

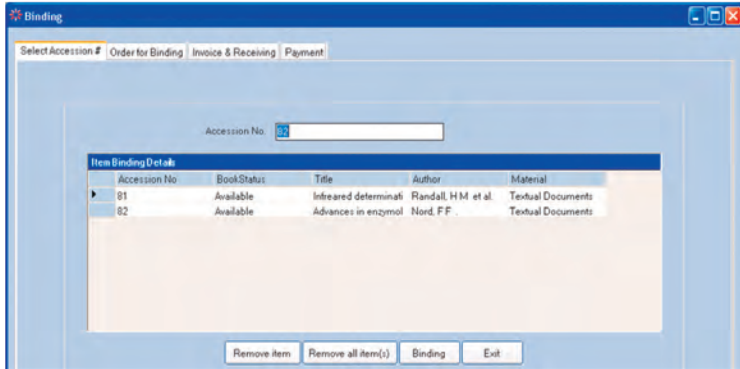
**Choose the items for binding**

**Preparation of order for binding**

**Receiving and Invoicing of bound items**

**Payment processing for received invoices**

**Choose to Items of Binding**



Using this option, member can choose the items which needs to be send for binding. To exercise this option click on "Select Accession #" tab you will get the screen.

In above screen enter/scan Accession Number one by one, click 'Binding' button when you are done, so all the items will be ready to be sent for binding.

Select Accession # Order for Binding Invoice & Receiving Payment

Order No:  Invoice Receive Date:  Discount Amount:   
 Invoice #:  Forwarding Date:  Overdue Amount:   
 Invoice Date:  Received Documents:  Misc. Amount:   
 Order Documents:  Invoice Amount:  Net Amount:

**Invoice & Receiving Details**

Select	Bind No.	Accession No.	Book Title	Expected Date	Price
<input type="checkbox"/>	B1	81	Infrared determination of organic s	5/21/2010 12.00	200
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	B2	82	Advances in enzymology and relate	5/21/2010 12.00	200

## Preparation of Order for Binding

To prepare Order for binding, enter order no, Budget Head, Binder's Name and Binding type, also enter price per document. Please note that the list of binders will be picked up from Administration Module's 'Serial Vendor master'. Tick mark the books you want to send for binding and click on 'save' button.

Select Accession # Order for Binding Invoice & Receiving Payment

Order No:  Budget Head:  Expected Date:   
 Binder:  Binding Type:  Price/DOC:

**Binding Order Details**

Select	Bind No.	Accession No.	Book Title	Price
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	B1	81	Infrared determination of organic structures	200
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	B2	82	Advances in enzymology and related subject	200

## Receiving and Invoicing of Bound items

This process enables you to receive the items which were sent for binding and process of the invoice. To receive item against a particular order, please select order number as shown in screen shot given above, enter the invoice number and other payment details, and choose the items you want to receive. Click on "Save" button to complete the process.

## Payment Processing for Received Invoice

To process the payment of invoice received against binding order, click on “Payment” tab, the screen will enable you to choose invoice, enter payment details against that invoice to complete the payment process, click on “Save” button.

### 4.4.3 Damaged Item(s)

This option needs to be exercised when some items of library collection are damaged and you want to tag them so as to take out of OPAC/Circulation. Once you click 'Damaged' button the screen reproduced below will appear:

The screenshot shows a web interface for marking items as damaged. At the top, there are input fields for 'Accession #', 'Title', 'Author', and 'Status'. Below these is a table titled 'Damaged Item(s) Details' with columns for 'Accession', 'Book Title', and 'Status'. At the bottom, there are three buttons: 'Damage', 'Repaired', and 'Exit'.

Accession #	83
Title	Temperature and human life /
Author	Winslow, C E A .
Status	Available

Damaged Item(s) Details		
Accession	Book Title	Status
▶ 83	Temperature	Damaged

To tag any item as 'Damaged' enter/scan accession number of that item and press 'Damage' button, If one wants to re-introduce damaged item for circulation, select the item and press 'Repaired' button.

#### 4.4.4 Missing Item(s)

This option is useful for handling missing items from the collection. An item can be tagged as missing using two options; You already have seen one of the option in the Transactions menu and another is using this option. To tag any item as missing, click “Missing” button of transaction menu. Select 'Missing Process’ tab You will get the screen reproduced below:

Accession No	Missing Reporting By Me	Forename	Surname	Missing Date
217102nl	009301050629	SMITA BHARTI	SMITA	10/1/2005
mrc2791	014518060046	PRATIK	DALAL	3/9/2007
Sw12535	018716060046	KOMAL	KISHNANI	9/5/2007
g42349nl	009201060026	KRUPALI	PATEL	7/1/2007
262529	002801090003	JHANI	SHAH	11/1/2009

Enter the Member Code/ID who has reported as an item missing and then the accession number of item, and click save button. Item will be tagged as missing.

If the missing item is being traced out, click on “Found Process” tab, you will get the screen reproduced below:

Enter the accession number of traced book, enter the requisite details and press 'Found' button, this item will be now available for circulation.

#### 4.4.5 Withdraw Item(s)

This option should be exercised when you want to withdraw item(s) (temporarily/permanently) from circulation. To withdraw item(s). Click on “Withdrawal Process” tab, enter/scan accession numbers of the items to be withdrawn and click on 'Withdraw' button as shown in the screen reproduced below:

Item Withdrawal Details				
Accession No.	BookStatus	Title	Author	Material
22334	Available	Kalpriksha f	Joshi, Mahad	Textual Docu
22344	Available	Maza nataki s	Varekar, Bha	Textual Docu

To re-introduce withdrawn item click on “Re-Introduce” tab , you will be getting list of all the items which have been withdrawn. Select the item you want to re-introduce back and click on “Available” button.

#### 4.4.6 Status Report

User can get the status wise list this option.

#### 4.4.7 Maintenance Report

One can get the list of lost, missing as binding items between two dates. Select option and enter two dates and click on “Display” to display the report.





## 5.0 Serials Control



Please go through the recent definition of a Serial in MARC21 to understand its nature better. Also please get thoroughly familiar with the data elements (like other resources) of serials as a resource.

Serials/Journals are now called as 'Continuing Resources'. More apparently described now, the MARC categorises Serials, Journals and other similar type of resources as continuing Resources. Apart from data elements related to title of the journals, periodicals, serials, newspapers, the annual subscription, Vol.No., Issue No. etc. are entered into the data records of a collection.

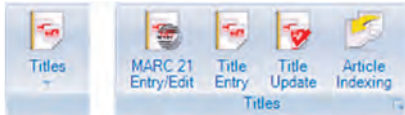
SOUL has full-fledged module to tackle variety of issues associated with these type of resources. Please ensure the master data (Administration – Serial Master) is up-to-date in terms of data-entry window.

The process of selections of titles, approval process, placing orders etc remains more or less the same as the Books.

The serials control module has following seven sub modules

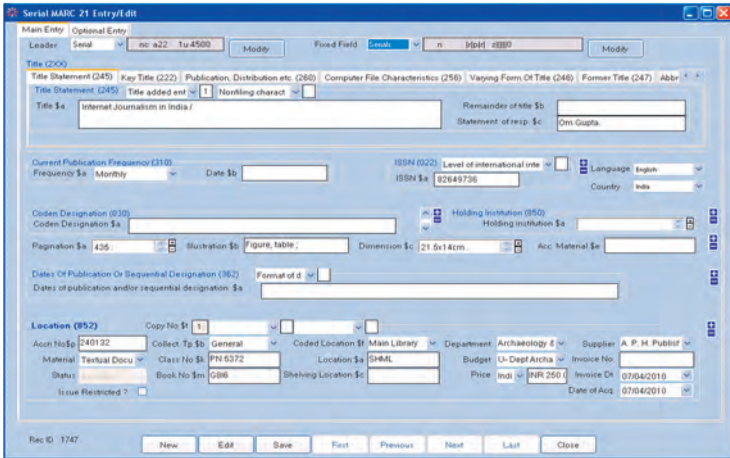
- κ Titles (Serials)
- κ Suggestions
- κ Subscription
- κ Payment
- κ Check-in
- κ Commercial Binding
- κ In-House Binding

5.1 Titles



All the serial titles (mainly those which are subscribed to by the Library), in all the formats (like print, electronic, CD-ROMs, online etc) are entered into the database in MARC21 format. Abridged functional version of MARC21 is available in Title Entry option. Please ensure that title details entered in either formats.

5.1.1 MARC21 Entry/Edit



Entering Leader and Fixed Field

As explained in Administration Module leader and fixed fields are necessary elements for any record following MARC21.



You can choose leader/fixed fields from predefined template by exploring the combo-box and choosing right type of material, If you want to modify leader/fixed fields specifically for the record you are entering please choose modify button and select appropriate values,

please note that the changes done will have effect only in current record which you are creating.

## Entering Title Information

According to MARC21 the main title of a journal will be rendered in “Title Statement” tag representing 245 as shown in the screen produced below.

However, the software also has feature of including various other types of title e.g. Key Title, Publication Distribution, etc, Computer File Characteristics, Varying form of Title, Former Title, Abbreviated Title, etc. Please input in all the fields as per your requirement.

## Other Information Related to Serials

Other information like Frequency, Date of Frequency, ISSN Number, Language, Country, Coden Designator, Holding Institution, Pagination, Illustrations, Dimensions Accompanying Materials and Date of Publications need to be entered as shown in screen reproduced above.

## Entering Local Information

Local Information (MARC Tag 852) can be entered in same way as explained in data entry part of (Cataloguing Module)

## Entering Optional Fields

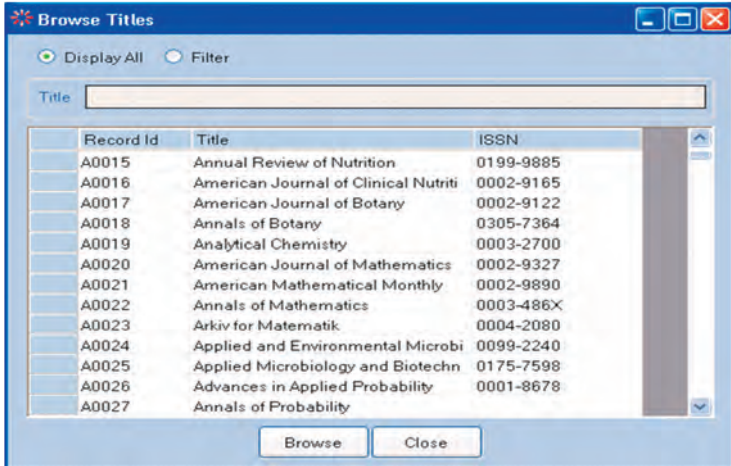
Optional Entry Screen in serial has facilities for entering Subject Added Entries, Notes, Corporate Names, Electronic Location and Series Information, Entry of these fields will be same as explained in Data Entry section of Catalogue Module.

### 5.1.2 Title Entry

SOUL Facilitate users using to use only essential fields. Titles must be entered in the given below form for further processing e.g. Ordering, Renewals of Order, Schedule Generation etc.

Title entry screen has provisions for entering Title, whether it is bound/indexed or not, type of subscription, Language, Department, Subject, Class No, ISSN, Coden, Location, Publisher and supplier details, mode of receipt, price details etc. as shown in screen reproduce above.

In second part of this title entry screen, user can enter delivery mode, status, frequency, volume and issue information, subscription details, parallel titles, language, physical medium, subject, keywords, URL Address, etc.



### 5.1.3 Title Update

Title Update option will allow you to make any corrections in the details of a specific record. The option will open screen for Browsing Titles. Double-click on a specific title from the list you want to update.

The screenshot shows a form for updating a title record. The fields are as follows:

- 1 of 2 | 2 of 2
- Delivery Mode: Register (dropdown) | Status: Active (dropdown) | Frequency: Monthly (dropdown)
- Volume From: 121 | To: 121 | Issue From: 1 | To: 12 | Lead Time: 5 | Issue/Volume: 12
- Subscription From: 21/05/2010 | To: 21/05/2011 | Year Of Publication: 2010 | Edition: Indian (dropdown)
- Parallel Title: (text field) | Language: English (dropdown)
- Other Title: (text field)
- Physical Media: Textual Documents (dropdown) | Subject Keyword(s): Computer Science (text field)
- URL Address: http://www.pqquest.com (text field)
- Note: (text field)

Click at modify to edit the details of the title on the screen. Click 'Save' to effect the changes.

## Entering Holding Details of a Title

Option from this Update will allow you to store additional information about this Holding like Missing Issues etc in Notes format. To feed-in holding details of a title, please click on 'Title Holding' button, you will get screen shot as reproduced below, enter the requisite values.

Title Holdings			
<b>Title</b>			
Code	<input type="text" value="14002"/>	Name	<input type="text" value="American Economic Review"/>
<b>Publisher</b>			
Code	<input type="text" value="14007"/>	Name	<input type="text" value="American Economic Association"/>
		Country	<input type="text" value="UNITED STATES"/>
<b>Other</b>			
Location	<input type="text"/>	Frequency	<input type="text" value="Five times a year"/>
		ISSN	<input type="text" value="0002-9320"/>
Available	<input type="text"/>		
Missing	<input type="text"/>		
Remark	<input type="text"/>		

Please do not forget to 'Save' if you have made any changes in the Title Holdings – details.

### 5.1.4 Article Indexing

Article indexing is an additional feature of SOUL 2.0. Articles from the periodicals/ serials can be scanned and the files can be attached to the relevant records of the title using MARC-21 format.

Screen reproduced below appears when Article Indexing option is selected. Select the record by using Edit option where Record ID, Title etc can be searched to find specific record.

For doing article indexing with the SOUL 2.0, you need to retrieve the journal by making search through title of the journal in the “search Host Item”[tag 773]. The system will retrieve the item in the window, where one needs to link the articles of the issue with the retrieved journals by using the 'Title Statement' representing tag 245 along with other associated information of the article such as author of the article, electronic location of the article or the full text of the article, if any available, in different formats such as .pdf, .doc, etc.

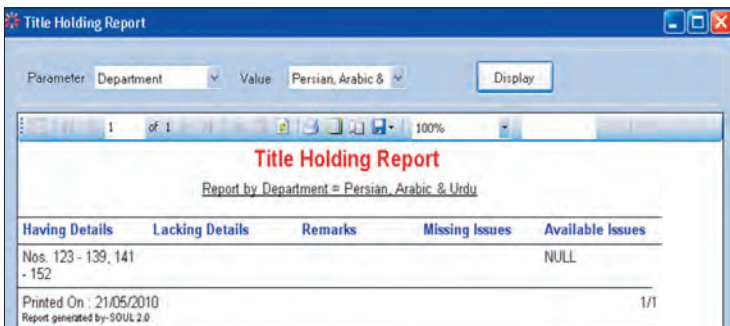
You may also attach the file by filling up details in 'Attachment' field appearing on the window. 'Save' to store the changes.

## 5.1.5 Title Report

This option will enable you to generate report on titles. The report parameters are Location, Department, Subscription, Publisher, Supplier, Frequency, Delivery Mode, Class Number, Language and Subject.

### 5.1.6 Title Holding Report

This option will enable you to generate report on holding of titles, the report parameters are Location, Department, Subscription, Publisher, Supplier, Frequency, Delivery Mode, Class Number, Language and Subject. Select desired criteria and input appropriate values to generate this report



## 5.2 Suggestions

The Library normally receives suggestions from its users (faculty, students, and professionals) to add a specific title. Select 'Suggestions' option to enter details of the suggestions received.

### 5.2.1 New Request

For entering new requests received from the user, click on “New Request” button, you will get the screen reproduced below. Enter basic details of request as shown below. Please note that fields which are labelled in red colour are mandatory.



**Serial Control Module -> Suggestion -> New Request**

**New Request**

Title: Request No. [791] Request Date: 21/05/2010 Reference No. 123456  
 Title: Data Quest  
 Department: Computer Engineering Name: AANAL PARIKH-008548080040  
 Publisher Name: AATCC Place: N.C. Country: UNITED STATES  
 Supplier Name: [Select] Place: Country:  
 Frequency: Monthly Subscription Date: From 21/05/2010 To 21/05/2011  
 ISSN: 23554323 Requested Copies: 1 Physical Media: Irregular Serial  
 Subject: Computer science,information & g Edition: Asian  
 Budget: 2008 Binding Dummy(2008.2008; Currency: India Rupees  
 Conversion Rate: Original Price: 200 Price (Rs.):  
 Remarks:  
 Publisher Is Supplier  
 Buttons: Cancel, Browse, Save, Clear, Delete, Close

### 5.2.2 Update Request

To update any request that has been previously entered please click on “Update Request” button, you will be prompted with screen reproduced below.

**Browse Titles**

Display All  Filter

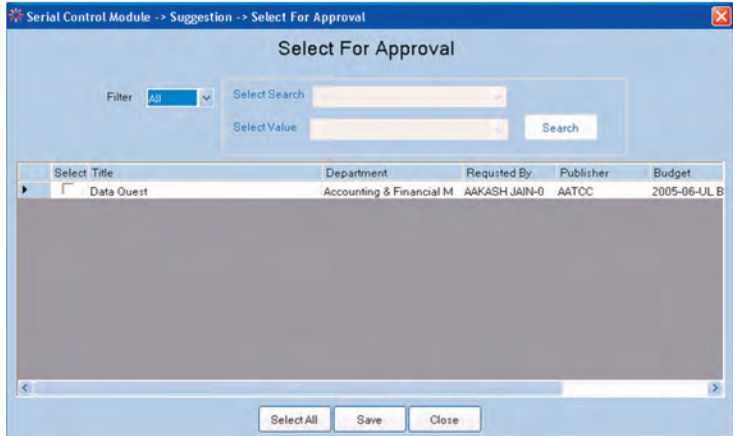
Title: [ ]  
 Request No.: [ ]  
 Search

Request	Requested Title	Requester's Name	Requ	Department
791	Data Quest	AAKASH JAIN-0020	5/21/2	Accounting & I

Find out the title of the request you want to update and double click on same (or click browse), you will be allowed to modify the details of your chosen request.

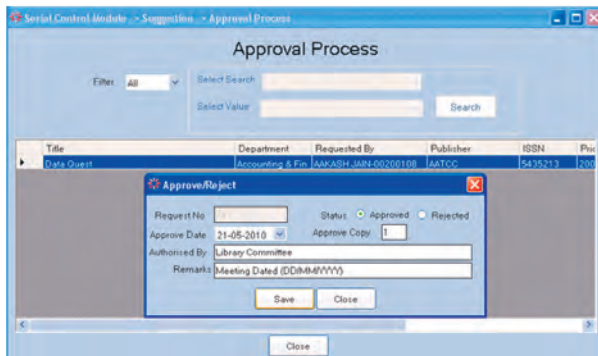
### 5.2.3 Select for Approval

Once all the request has been entered, you need to send the list to Approval Committee or to the concerned authorities for approved. Choose the titles approval committee by using appropriate filter and click on save button.



### 5.2.4 Approval Process

Once you receive concurrence of approval authority for requested title, click on “Approval Process” button, list of all requested titles will be displayed as shown in screen reproduced below:



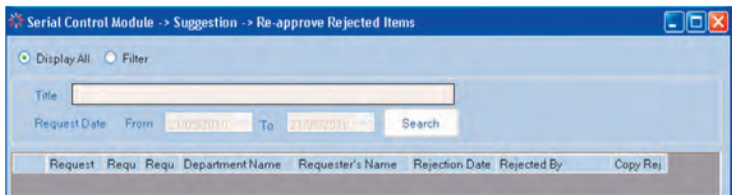
Double Click on the desired title and fill-in appropriate approval details against authorised by and save.

The data of 'Approved Titles' can be retrieved through various means from the following Menu:

Once serials are approved, order can be placed with local agencies or suppliers to subscribe the journals as explained in “Subscription” section.

### 5.2.5 Re-Approve Rejected Titles

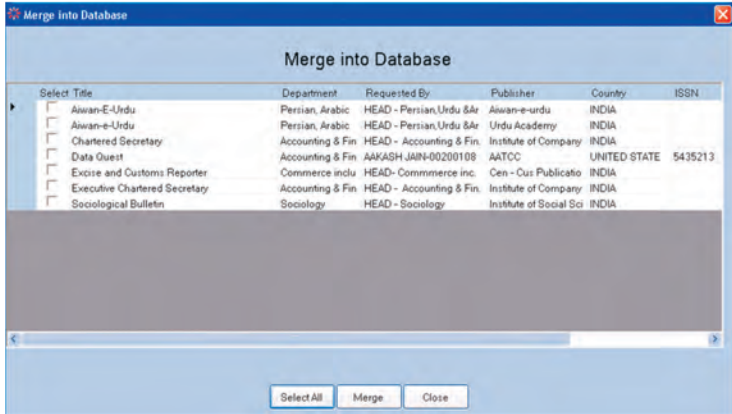
There would be occasions, when some of the titles get rejected or some of them are kept on hold (till the appropriate Budget is available). If we have to revive the rejected titles, there is a process to bring them into SOUL and continue processing further. Click on 'Re-approve-Rejected ', List of rejected titles will appear. Select the appropriate title which was re-approved and proceed further for placing orders. We have an option to retrieve such titles through following Menu:



Input the appropriate details and click 'Save'. Next step is to merge the approved Titles into your database.

### 5.2.6 Merge into Database

Tick-mark the boxes against the titles – and click the Merge Button. MARC records for the approved titles will be created as soon as you merge records. Note down the record number(s) shown for future reference. You also have an option to Edit MARC record at this stage too. You may Edit the record later (after placing the Order(s) etc.).



Click 'Yes' if you wish to edit MARC record, else 'No'. (It would be useful to note down the record number created for each title. This will help you to edit the MARC record later .

### 5.2.7 Request Report

You can print listing of all the requests by selecting appropriate filter criteria (Budget - wise, Department-wise or Date-wise) as shown in screen shot reproduced below.

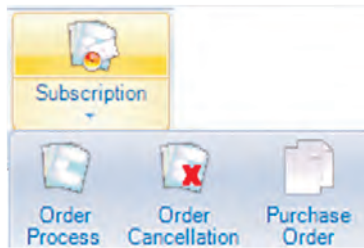


### 5.3 Subscriptions

Using this option you can place the order either directly with the publisher or with a supplier. Click on 'Subscriptions' to place order/renew subscription.

#### 5.3.1 New Order

Select Order Process under Subscriptions Menu.



Order Process deals with raising order in the name of specific publisher/supplier. This menu also allows you to renew the subscription for the existing serials collection.

Order Process sequence is as follows:

First of all enter order number (It will be auto generated and has been enabled in letter number generation in Administration Module), Enter order date, Choose the publisher/vendor with whom you want to place the order. Choose name of the supplier/publisher from list box, now you will need to choose type of order i.e. Firm Order, Standing Order or Temporary Order. You can also place remarks if you want.

Serial Control Module -> Subscription -> Order Process

Order Process

New Renew

Order No: Ordlnr#010 Date: 21-05-2010 Type: Supplier Name: Akshar Prakshan Pvt. Ltd.

Type of Order: Firm Order Remarks: Add Titles from list

Select Title	Subscription Dat	Expiry Date	Volume From	Volume To	Issue From	Issue To
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Data Quest	5/14/2010	5/14/2011				

Add Select All Save Close

Usually titles will appear as per your chosen criteria of supplier/publisher, if you want to add more titles to an order for a particular supplier tick on “ Add titles from List” , and click on “ADD” button, approved titles will appear in the pop-up box – with an option to pick-up the ones for which you are placing the order. Tick-mark the ones you wish to add and Click 'Pick'. Once you pick-up the titles, they will appear in the window given above from where the Order Process was triggered.

Please ensure all the fields for given title are appropriately filled-up, Vol.no. (range), Issue (range) (if you have all the details). But remember - Delivery Mode field the mandatory delivery mode from the drop-down box – Airmail, Courier, Hand Delivery, Local, Parcel, Registered Post or Surface.

Click 'Save' button. Small pop-up box will appear with Order Value. as shown In screen shot.

## Renewals

Renewals process is very simple - Under Order Process option, just click Renew button available next to 'New'. You will get following screen

The screenshot shows a 'Renew' window with the following fields and options:

- Buttons: New, Renew
- Section: Order Process
- Search options: Search by Supplier (selected), Search by Title
- Search button
- Vendor Name: Akshar Prakashan Pvt. Ltd.
- View All Orders:
- Old Order No.: 0055
- New Order No.:
- Type of Order:
- Renewal Date: 21/05/2010
- Remarks:

Select Title	Subscription Dat.	Expiry Date	Volume From	Volume To	Issue From	Issue
<input type="checkbox"/> ICFAI Journal of Marketing Research	1/1/2010	12/31/2010	1	1	1	4

Search the title to be renewed by supplier name or by title itself, enter old order number, fill-up correct details against each title (including renewal period) and click 'Save' followed by 'OK' in the pop-up box.

Click on "Save" button to complete the process.

### 5.3.2 Cancel Order

This option can be exercised when you what is cancel the order either partially or fully. To perform this operation, click on "Cancellation of Order" button, you will be prompted with a window asking order number of order to be cancelled, fill in appropriate details, select the titles you want to cancel from that particular order, if you want to cancel entire order then tick on "Cancel Whole Order". After selecting all the titles click on "Cancel Order" button to complete the operation.

### 5.3.3 Purchase Order

Purchase order can be printed by clicking on "Purchase Order" button, one can print purchase orders by Order No, Order Date or Supplier. To print purchase order, fill in the appropriate values and click on display button.

The screenshot shows a 'Purchase Order' window with the following details:

- Section: Purchase Order
- Select option: Order Date
- Order Date between: 20/05/2010 And 22/05/2010
- Display button
- Page indicator: 1 of 1
- Zoom: 100%
- Title: Purchase Order
- Order Date: 21/05/2010
- To: Akshar Prakashan Pvt. Ltd., 2/36 Ansari Road, Daryaganj, New Delhi 110002

### 5.3.4 Order Report

There are a number of options to list created order, list of orders can be generated according to status i.e. All Orders, Generated Orders, Completed orders and Cancelled orders.

Serial Control -> Subscription -> Order Report

Status: **Generated** Date Between: 20/05/2010 to 22/05/2010 Display

**Order Report**  
Report by Status: 'Generated' between date 5/20/2010 and 5/22/2010

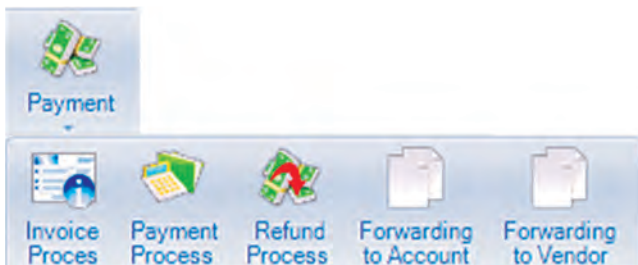
Order No.	Order Date	Supplier/Publisher Name	Price	Order Type
ord/mf/020	21/05/2010	Akshar Prakashan Pvt. Ltd.	300.00	Firm Order

SrNo	Title	Publisher Name	Edition	Copies	Total Price	Subscription Date
1.	Data Quest	Cyber Media (I) Ltd.	Indian	1	300.00	14-05-2010 : 14-05-2011

Printed On :21/05/2010  
Report generated by:SOUL 2.0

### 5.4 Payment

Once you place orders with publishers/suppliers, publisher/vendor would raise their invoices. Publishers/suppliers most of the time asks for advance payment for the subscriptions. Based on your Purchase Order they will raise the invoice(s). To complete the payment process, select 'Payment' option from the top menu-bar and initiate invoice process.





### 5.4.1 Invoice Process

As a first step in payment process, to enter invoice details against each order for which payment needs to be processed. Invoices can be entered either for all orders or standing orders. Please note that there may be cases in standing orders where invoice come after you have received serials.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Serial Control Module -> Payment -> Invoice Processing". It contains the following elements:

- Search Section:** Includes a "Publisher/Supplier" dropdown menu, a "Search" button, an "Invoice No." field with the value "invfin#050", and an "Invoice Date" dropdown menu with the value "21/05/2010".
- Invoice Details Table:** A table with columns: Title, Order no, Start Date, End Date, Price, Handlin, Postage, Currency, Conv.R, Discoun, Net Price, Cops. The first row is: Data Quest, ordfin#020, 5/14/2010, 5/14/2011, 300, 0, 0, India Rupees, 1, 0, 300, 1.
- Buttons:** "Calculation of Misc. Charges" and "Remove from List".
- Miscellaneous Charges Section:** Titled "Miscellaneous Charges On Net Amount". It includes a "Budget" dropdown menu with the value "2008 Binding Dummy(20)", and fields for "Handling Charges", "PostageCharge", "Net Amount In INR", and "Total Net Amount".
- Footer:** "Save Data" label and "Save" and "Close" buttons.

Select the publisher/supplier from the drop-down menu – and click 'Search' button. All the orders placed with that publisher/supplier will appear with brief details.

Select the titles from the pop-up box for which invoice has been raised by the supplier/Publisher and 'Save'.

Fill-up Invoice No. and check whether all the other details are correct. On some titles we get discount (fixed percentage %) on published subscription rate. Fill-up the % rate in the discount column against each serial title. Click on 'Calculate Misc.Charges'. This will automatically calculate net price of the subscription. It will also appear in the 'NetAmount in INR' box on right side of the window.

You may also input other miscellaneous charges which are added to Subscription Cost. Normally they are handling charges and/or Postage etc. They are normally in lump sum. Click on 'Calculation of Misc. Charges' and input details in respective fields.

Serial Control Module -> Payment -> Invoice Processing

All Orders | Standing Orders

Invoice Processing

Publisher/Supplier: Indian School | Search | Invoice No. | Invoice Date: 21/05/2010

Invoice Details

Title	Order no.	Invoice Start	Invoice End	Issue R	Estimat Invoice	Handlin	Postage	Currency	Conv_R	Net Price

Calculation of Misc. Charges:

Miscellaneous Charges On Net Amount

Budget: 2008 Binding Dummy(20) | Handling Charges: | PostageCharge: | Net Amount In INR: | Total Net Amount: |

Save Data:

Invoice cost will be calculated automatically, cross check the same with physically received invoice. 'Save' the information and Close to keep the already fed details intact.

#### 5.4.2 Payment Process



This operation needs to be exercised for entering payment details for received invoice. Select the vendor from the drop-down menu. All the invoices raised by that vendor will appear in the central window. Tick-mark the box against the invoice you are planning to pay. Feed amount payable (i.e. Amount of the Invoice) – and click 'Calculate'.

Serial Control Module -> Payment -> Payment Processing

### Payment Process

Select:  Publisher/Supplier:

**Invoice Details**

Select	Invoice No.	Order No.	Invoice Date	Order Date	Net Amount	Amount Paid	Amnt Payable	Remaining
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	invin050	ordfin020	5/21/2010	5/21/2010	300	0	300	0

**Payment Details**

Payment By:  Branch Name:

Payment Date:  Bank's Name:

Total Amount:  Cheque/DD no.:

Select the option to make payment either in cash or by cheque/DD, credit card or (see 5.4.4 for forwarding letter to the accounts department of the institution for payment). Select appropriately and Save. Message of Payment Made appears.

### 5.4.3 Refund Process

Refund process is required in case where either publisher/vendor refunds amount to the institution for non-supply of certain issues or in case when the periodical ceases to publish. Find out the order number against which refund is received. Fill up the details with publisher's letter Reference No./date and Save. The amount mentioned against. Refund will get added to the 'Budget' against which this invoice was charged.

### 5.4.4 Forwarding Letter to Account/Vendor

This option facilitates user to generate forwarding letter to Account Section requesting them to release the payment. One can generate this letter by Invoice No, Payment Date and supplier.

**Subject : Request for Payment**

Dear Sir/Madam We have received invoices with following details, It is being requested to process the payment for the same. Librarian

Invoice No	Invoice Date	Vendor Name-Place	Total Invoice Amount
11	20/02/2004	D K Joshi - Vadodara	1,000.00

Title	Price	Copies	Order No
Economic Times	1,000.00	1	N1

### 5.4.5 Invoice Report

One can generate invoice register supplier wise, invoice report can be generated between range of dates as well as budget wise. This report will give you status of each invoice.

### 5.4.6 Payment Report

This report will give you list of all the payments generated against each order and received invoice, one can generate this report by supplier, date and budget as report parameters.

### 5.4.7 Refund Report

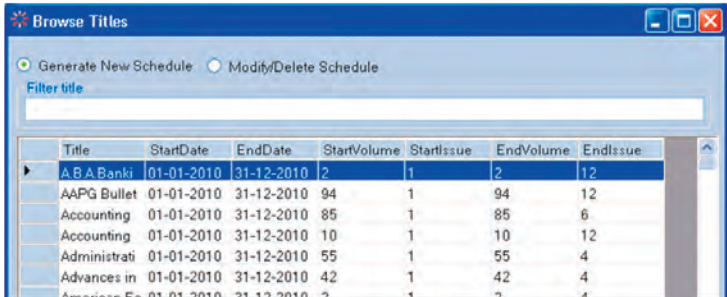
This option facilitates users to generate the report of refunded amount between particular dates.

## 5.5 Check-In



The next logical step is to receive the issues of subscribed serials. But before we proceeding further, ensure that all the records for the serials in database have correct details in MARC format. To initiate check-in process, first step is to generate schedule of ordered title.

## 5.5.1 Schedule Generation

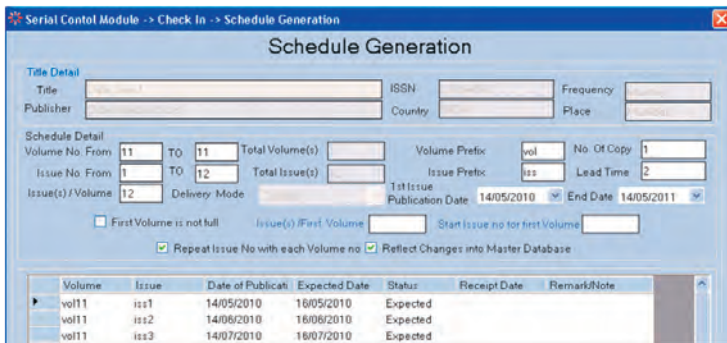


**Browse Titles**

Generate New Schedule     Modify/Delete Schedule

Filter title

Title	StartDate	EndDate	StartVolume	StartIssue	EndVolume	EndIssue
A B A Banki	01-01-2010	31-12-2010	2	1	2	12
AAPG Bullet	01-01-2010	31-12-2010	94	1	94	12
Accounting	01-01-2010	31-12-2010	85	1	85	6
Accounting	01-01-2010	31-12-2010	10	1	10	12
Administrati	01-01-2010	31-12-2010	55	1	55	4
Advances in	01-01-2010	31-12-2010	42	1	42	4
American Ec	01-01-2010	31-12-2010	2	1	2	4

**Serial Control Module -> Check In -> Schedule Generation**

### Schedule Generation

**Title Detail**

Title:  ISSN:  Frequency:

Publisher:  Country:  Place:

**Schedule Detail**

Volume No. From:  TO:  Total Volume(s):  Volume Prefix:  No. Of Copy:

Issue No. From:  TO:  Total Issue(s):  Issue Prefix:  Lead Time:

Issue(s) / Volume:  Delivery Mode:  Tit Issue:  Publication Date:  End Date:

First Volume is not full    Issue(s) /First Volume:  Start Issue no for first Volume:

Repeat Issue No with each Volume no     Reflect Changes into Master Database

Volume	Issue	Date of Publicati	Expected Date	Status	Receipt Date	Remark/Note
vol11	iss1	14/05/2010	16/05/2010	Expected		
vol11	iss2	14/06/2010	16/06/2010	Expected		
vol11	iss3	14/07/2010	16/07/2010	Expected		

Ensure that the requisite details are filled up - especially volume no., issues from to, lead Time (i.e. no. of days to receive copy after publication), publication date range, and tick the boxes as required. If you have subscribed serial in middle of the year (i.e. not the full volume), tick mark the check box 'First Volume is not Full' and enter starting issue and volume.

Click on "Generate Schedule" button, "Save" the changes to complete the process.

### If you have to modify the generated schedule

There are some situations where arrival schedule of a title gets changed, in such cases you may need to review and modify previously generated schedule for that particular title. To do so select browse mode and choose Modify/Delete option. List of journals for which

schedule has been generated will be available. Double click on the title and click 'Regenerate Schedule' button. A pop-up box will appear as reproduced in screen shot below

where you will be able to modify the details. Make the required changes and click Save.

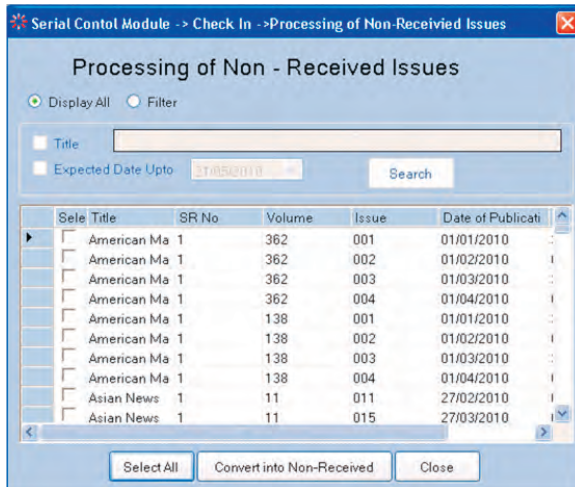
Schedule will be generated with Issue Date, Expected Date and its status. Save the schedule and click 'Close'.

### 5.5.2 Non Received Process

You also will be able to generate a report on Non-received Issues – based on the date of publication and expected date of receipt. Reminders to vendor/supplier/publisher can be generated based on the data stored in this schedule.

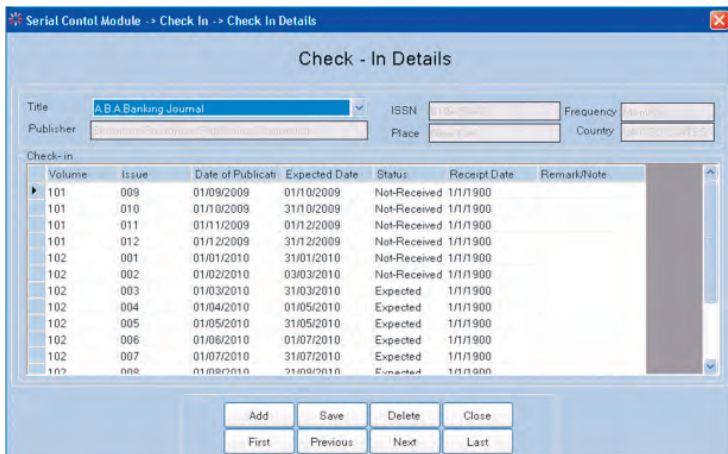
After trying all the means to obtain the non-received issues of certain periodicals update the status of all of them into Non-Received.

You can select titles by filtering them with title name or expected date, choose the issues you want to convert to “Non Received” and press “Convert to Non-Received” Button. This will get reflected in reminder reports.



### 5.5.3 Check-in Details

This option may be exercised to fill in check-in details for each issue of subscribed journal. When you click on “Check-in Details” list of journals will appear in alphabetical order. Click the title of the issue received .





Choose the issue you have received physically, change the status from 'Expected' to 'Received' – Enter the date of receipt, write remarks if appropriate, correct other details if required and r 'Save' the updated record.

For additional issue(s), that are not part of generated schedule for a title, click on “Add” button, A pop-up box will appear – fill- up the correct details, change the status to received – write Remark if appropriate and 'Save' the updated record.

**Add Additional Issues**

Volume No: 103    Issue No: 1    Status: Received

Publication Date: 21/05/2010    Expected Date: 21/05/2010    Receipt Date: 21/05/2010

Remarks: \_\_\_\_\_

Save    Cancel

### 5.5.4 Remove Received Issues

This option will enable you to remove all received issues in the past. To perform this operation click on “Remove Received” button.

**frm\_Remove\_received**

Processing of Received Issues

Display All     Filter

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Received Between: \_\_\_\_\_ And: 31/05/2010    Search

Title	Volume	Issue	Date of Publicati	Expected Date	R
American Ma 356	001	001	01/01/2004	31/01/2004	13
American Ma 356	002	002	01/02/2004	02/03/2004	2E
American Ma 356	003	003	01/03/2004	31/03/2004	2E
American Ma 356	004	004	01/04/2004	01/05/2004	13
American Ma 356	005	005	01/05/2004	31/05/2004	0E
American Ma 356	006	006	01/06/2004	01/07/2004	0E
American Ma 356	007	007	01/07/2004	31/07/2004	2E
American Ma 356	008	008	01/08/2004	31/08/2004	13
American Ma 356	009	009	01/09/2004	01/10/2004	14
American Ma 356	010	010	01/10/2004	31/10/2004	01

Export & Delete    Close



You will get list of all received issues. It is advisable to use filter like title or received dates.

Filter out your results using criteria according to your requirement and press “Export & Delete” button. You will be prompted to save the location of exported file (.csv) format, give desired location, a file will be created and your record will be deleted from the database.

### **5.5.5 Reminder for Non-receipt / Missing Issues**

The titles which were not received for long time and some of them may not be arriving at all, reports can be taken out for sending them to the suppliers/publishers. Select 'Reminder Letter' from the Top Menu-Bar, select proper filter (By supplier/publisher/expected date) and generate the reminders.

### **5.5.6 Check-In Report**

One can get the list of issues with different parameters like Expected Issues, Received Issues, Not Received Issues, Binded Issues or Any status. User can filter the list by title as well as user can list the issues between two dates.

## **5.6 Commercial Binding/In House Binding**

Once the issues for one complete volume are received, you may like to send them for binding. Once received in Bound Volume format they will become a part of library's Main/Core reference collection. Therefore such individual issues will have to be removed from the general purpose collection. The process of removal can be performed by selecting specific titles, specifying the received dates and selecting the option 'Export & Delete'.

Binding modules facilitate us to send the issues of a specific journal for getting them properly bound. Various libraries follow different systems to monitor/stock such resources.

The Process of selection of titles and issues remains the same in case of commercial binding as well as in-house binding. They differ only because outside vendors (Binders) are paid for the Bound-Volume job-work. Therefore there is a process of raising order, invoice and payment by cheque/cash or through Accounts Department.

### 5.6.1 Preparation of Sets

The first task in bound-volume journals is to identify the titles and making the sets of each volume published in a given period. Fill up appropriate details e.g. set number, ISSN No, binding type, colour and embossing text. 'Save' the records.

Serial Control Module -> Binding -> Commercial Binding -> Preparation Of Sets

#### Preparation of Sets

Set No:  Received On/Before:  Search:

Title:  ISSN:  Frequency:

Publisher:  Place:  Country:

Check	Volume	Issue	Sr. No	Date of Publication	Receipt Date	Status	Remark/Note
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	100	001	1	1/1/2008	4/16/2008	Received	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	100	002	1	2/1/2008	4/10/2008	Received	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	100	003	1	3/1/2008	4/28/2008	Received	
<input type="checkbox"/>	100	004	1	4/1/2008	5/13/2008	Received	
<input type="checkbox"/>	100	005	1	5/1/2008	6/3/2008	Received	
<input type="checkbox"/>	100	006	1	6/1/2008	7/26/2008	Received	
<input type="checkbox"/>	100	007	1	7/1/2008	8/14/2008	Received	

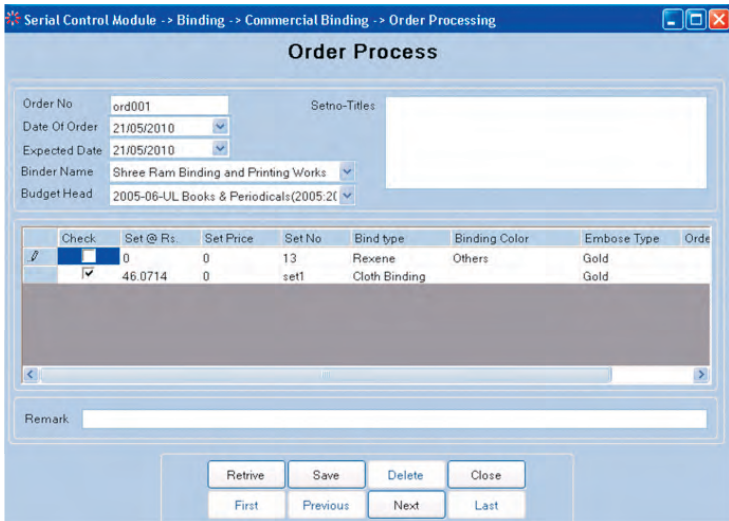
Binding Type:  Binding Colour:  Embossing Type:

First Page:  Last Page:  Index(Y/N):

Embossing Text:  Remark:

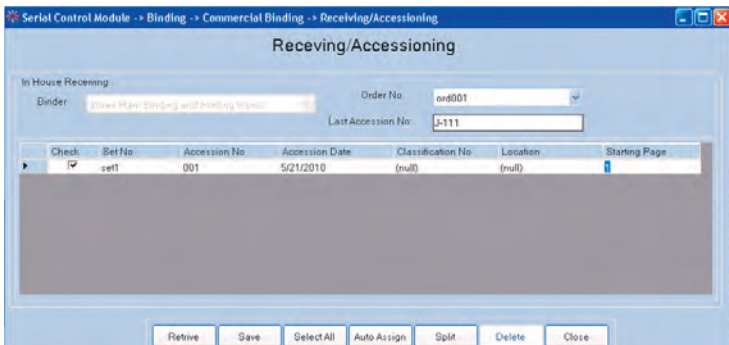
### 5.6.2 Order Process

Use this option to create an order for the set prepared for binding. By clicking this option you will be able to see all un-ordered sets which you need to send for binding. Enter order number and dates, choose the budget head and tick the sets you want to send for binding, Enter the binding price against each set. Click on "Save" button to finish the operation. One can print order for binding from "Reports".



### 5.6.3 Receiving / Accessioning

This option enables user to receive the sets which were ordered for binding.



Select the order numbers for which you want to receive the sets enter the requisite details like Accession No, date, class number and location.

Please note that there may be journals which are getting split as after binding. To handle such cases click on “Split” button, you will be prompted to enter number of parts, enter the data, Now you can assign different Accession No.s to different parts of bound volumes Click on “Save” button to complete the operation.

#### 5.6.4 Invoice Process

This option enables you to process the invoice for binding orders.

Serial Control Module -> Binding -> Commercial Binding -> Invoice Processing

### Binding - Invoice Process

Invoice Process

Invoice No:  Date of Invoice:

Binder:

Order no	Send Date	Receipt Date	budget code	price	Overdue Fine
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ord001	5/21/2010	5/21/2010	2005-06-UL Books & Periodical	100	

Forward No:  Forward Date:  To Whom:

Percentage Discount:  Misc. Amount:

Invoice Amount:   
Net Amount:

To perform this operation enter the invoice no and date, Select the binder, clicking on “Add Orders” button choose the orders against which invoice is to be received. Select the corresponding order, enter the forwarding details as well as other fields and click on save button to complete the operation.

### 5.6.5 Payment

This option enables you to process the payment against received invoice. To perform this operation, select the binder for whom the payment is due. You will be able to see all the received invoices from that binder, tick mark against each invoice you want to pay as shown in screen reproduced below.

Sl Invoice No.	Invoice Date	Order No.	Net Amount	Paid Amount	Amount payable
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 212	4/27/2005	12	125.0000	125	

**Payment Details:**  
 Receipt Note No: infrcp0102 | Bank Name: State Bank Of India  
 Receipt Note Date: 21/05/2010 | Branch: Gujarat University  
 Paymode: Cheque | Bank Charges:  
 Cheque/Draft No: 123456789 | Date Of Cheque/Draft: 21/05/2010

**Forward Details:**  
 No: 23 | Date: 21/05/2010 | Mode: Courier  
 Remark: none

**Acknowledgement Details:**  
 No: 32 | Date: 21/05/2010  
 Remark: none

This interface also facilitates you to enter payment details i.e. receipt note no and date, Payment mode, bank details etc. along with forwarding remark. Please fill in requisite details and click on “Save” button to complete the operation.

### 5.6.6 Binding Reports



Binding Module consists of binding reports, reminder to binder, purchase order, bound volume labels which are needed to handle Bound-Volumes efficiently.



## 6.0 OPAC (Online Public Access Catalogue)



OPAC is the end-result of all the effort we have made so far in creating and maintaining the database. This is the interface between the resources stocked in the library and the user-needs an efficient OPAC will fulfil all the information retrieval requirement of a user. It should be able to cater to all the needs of a 'novice' as well as an 'Expert' user. It should have options from simple search to Advance search like combination of using boolean operators between all the entry elements. SOUL has facility to approach the database with three different approach :

- 1] Simple Search (with fixed combinations of common fields)
- 2] Boolean Search (Natural Language nomenclature but with AND, OR operators to join the fields); and
- 3] Advance Boolean (Combination of using Boolean operators between any of the field tags from MARC records)

OPAC also has facilities to generate bibliographies. Online status of any item stocked, along with its location is available to save the time of the user.

## 6.1 Simple Search

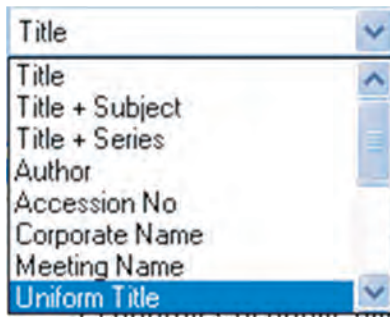
OPAC -> Simple Search

Search by:    Filter By Type of Material  Show Result

Any Where In Word  Exact Search

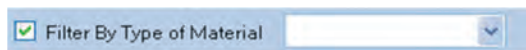
Sr No.	Title / Rem of Title	Title	Call No.	Location	Accession No.	Status
1	Income stabilization for a devel	Income stabilization for a developing democracy: a st	HC 106/5/1M41	SHML	8274	Available
2	Economics for commercial stu	Economics for commercial students and business me	HB 171/J.C7E2	SHML	8790	Available
3	Economics of public utilities /	Economics of public utilities /	HD 2763/17	SHML	5889	Available
4	Engineering economics : work	Engineering economics : works organization and man	HD 2351/B8	SHML	6012	Available
5	The economics of repressed in	The economics of repressed inflation /	HG 229/CAE2	SHML	9142	Available
6	Prelude to economics /	Prelude to economics /	HB 171/O7P7	SHML	9303	Available
7	Groundwork of economics /	Groundwork of economics /	HC 435/M807	SHML	9485	Available
8	The Economics of poverty and	The Economics of poverty and discrimination /	HC109/P6S2	SHML	GT21480	Available
9	Introduction to economics /	Introduction to economics /	HB 171/S34	SHML	3481	Available
10	Economics in practice /	Economics in practice /	HC 57/P4	SHML	3494	Available

User can use following parameters to perform a simple search :

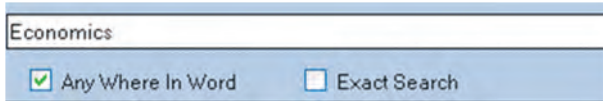


To perform search on any from any of the field listed above, select the field first and then enter your search term in text box .

If you want to filter your results by any specific type of material, please choose corresponding option by checking the option “Filter By Type of material”.



One can also choose “exact search” or “Any where in word”

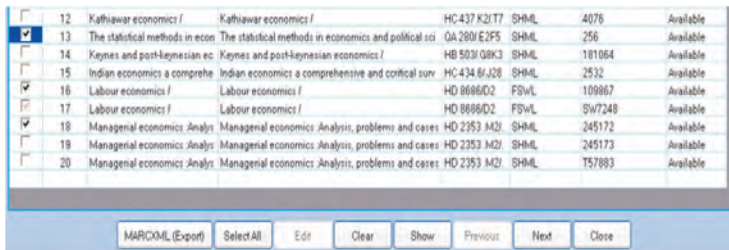


If you want to search for your key term anywhere in the word/field, tick 'Any Where in the Word' where as “Exact Search” will give search results only if your search term is found in beginning of the field.

You can also restrict number of records by selecting corresponding number before pressing “Show Result” button.



Once results are retrieved, you can export selected titles in MARCXML format by pressing “MARCXML (Export)” button.



The detailed bibliography of search results can be seen by selecting the titles and pressing “Show” button, on clicking of show button a window will pop-up with default as basic view.



However, one can easily switch between 'Basic', 'Full' and 'MARC' view by choosing appropriate tab.



Basic Record Full Record Marc Record

1 of 1 100%

### Record Details (Basic)

Record ID: 751

**Title** : The statistical methods in economics and political science / [View Attachment](#)  
 : P Sargent Florence

**Author** : Florence, P Sargent

**Publisher** : London :  
 : Kegan paul,trench,trubner & co.,  
 : 1929.

**Edition**

**Physical Description** : 467 :  
 : 22x14cms.

**ISBN / ISSN**

**Class No** : QA 280

**Subject / Keyword** : Econometrics.  
 : Economics-Mathematics-Theory.  
 : Mathematics-Economics-Theory.  
 : Economics-Statistics-Theory.

**URL**

**Note**

Accession No	Status	Class No	Collection Type	Book No	Price	Location
256	Available	QA 280		E2F5	1-0-0	SHML

The “Basic Record” tab will give you brief bibliography of the record, if your record has attachment or URL, you can click on “View Attachment” button to see the attachment or click on URL for direct navigation to specified URL.

Clicking on “Full Record” tab will enable you to see all the fields along with description of the fields as show in screen shot given below.

**Publication, Distribution, Etc. (Imprint) (NR)**

Place of publication, distribution, etc. (R) : London :

Name of publisher, distributor, etc. (R) : Kegan paul,trench,trubner & co.,

Date of publication, distribution, etc. (R) : 1929.

**Physical Description (R)**

Extent (R) : 467 :

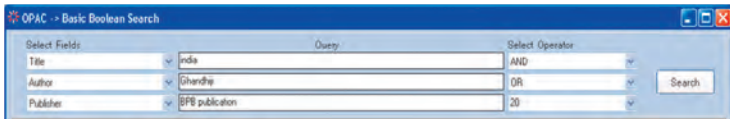
Dimensions (R) : 22x14cms.

“MARC Record” tab will enable you to see same record in MARC21 tags.

260		a	:	London :
260		b	:	Kegan paul,trench,tribner & co .
260		c	:	1929.
300	—	a	:	467 :
300	—	c	:	22x14cms.

## 6.2 Boolean Search

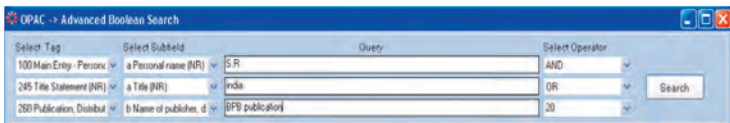
A versatile tool in the hands of a professional user, Boolean operators can be placed between commonly used sought fields for searching the resources stocked.



The screenshot shows the 'OPAC -> Basic Boolean Search' window. It features a 'Select Fields' section with three dropdown menus: 'Title' (set to 'India'), 'Author' (set to 'Ghanshyam'), and 'Publisher' (set to 'BFB publication'). To the right is a 'Query' input field. Further right is a 'Select Operator' section with two dropdown menus: 'AND' and 'OR'. A 'Search' button is located on the right side of the window.

Here you can perform search by using three different search terms and two Boolean operators, rest of the functions are same as explained above.

## 6.3 Advance Boolean Search



The screenshot shows the 'OPAC -> Advanced Boolean Search' window. It features a 'Select Tag' section with three dropdown menus: '100 Main Entry - Persons' (set to 'Personal name (NR)'), '245 Title Statement (NR)' (set to 'Title (NR)'), and '260 Publication, Distribut' (set to 'Name of publisher, d'). To the right is a 'Query' input field. Further right is a 'Select Operator' section with two dropdown menus: 'AND' and 'OR'. A 'Search' button is located on the right side of the window.

Advance Boolean search option enable users to perform search through entire database using any of the MARC21 based tag. The operation in simple, first choose the tag you want to search for, then select the corresponding subfield (of that tag) enter the search term, select boolean operator and perform the search. One can use up to three search criteria and two boolean operators. Rest of the functionalities are same as explained in 'Basic Search'.

## 6.4 Member OPAC

This option is useful when any library member wants to see his own status. He/she can do so by simply entering his member code/ ID as shown in screen reproduced below.

**Member Information**

Book/Member Details: Member Code/Member ID: 189935100001

Member Details:

Member Name: Yatrik Patel      Member Code: 189935100001      Current Due: 10,000  
 Department: University Library/Faculty      Category: Lib. Technical      Item Issued: 0

Privileges Details:

Issue    Privileges    Reserve

MediaDesc	IssuePeriod	MaxAllow	CurrentIssu	MaxReserv	CurrentRes	ReservePer	FinePhase	FinePhase	FinePhase
Textual Do	365	6	6	2	2	15	0	0	0.00
Theses	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.00
Reports	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.00
Meeting Do	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.00
Patent	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.00
Graduate	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.00

Exit

Using this option member can see privileges, item issued/reserved under his/her member card.

## APPENDIX

MARC Bibliographic formats are standards for representing and communicating bibliographic and related information in machine-readable form. It is a global standard for 21st Century's library developed in collaboration with Library of Congress, Canadian Library Association and British Library, UK. The complete field-wise detailed description with latest updates on it is available on the website of Library of Congress at <http://www.loc.gov/marc/>. It has five different formats – Bibliographic, Authority, Holdings, Classification and Community. SOUL 2.0 has adopted to Bibliographic and Authority formats.

A MARC record involves three elements: the record structure, the content designation and the data content of the record. The structure of MARC record is an implementation of format for information Interchange – ISO-2709. Content designation defines the codes and conventions for data elements within a record and to support manipulation of those data. The data content of the most elements are defined outside the formats using AACR2, LCSH, Sears List of Subject Heading, and other classification schemes used by the library.

The organization of the MARC record is based on the record structure of the ISO-2709 exchange format. It is divided in three sections – the leader, the directory, and the variable fields. The leader consists of 24 characters, the directory consists of 12 characters containing the tag, starting position, and length of each field within the record. The directory ends with a hex value 1E representing field terminator and record ends with a hex value 1D representing record terminator. MARC21 distinguishes variable fields with variable fixed fields and variable data fields. SOUL 2.0 provides templates for leader and variable fixed fields (Tag 008), which can be selected from the combo-box. As explained in the manual, pre-defined leader and fixed fields are editable and cataloguers can modify according to item being catalogued. Variable data fields are included in the data entry template of the SOUL 2.0.

## The Leader

The leader represents following 24 characters (character positions 00 to 23) of the MARC 21 record. SOUL 2.0 has pre-defined leader for books, theses and serials databases. Apart from these pre-defined leaders, user can also create their own template of the leader for different kind of items. Out of these 24 characters, SOUL 2.0 users need to identify following character positions at the time of modifying the leader:

**Record status:** character position 05 represents ASCII graphic character which indicates the relation of the record to a file.

**Type of Record:** character position 06 represents ASCII graphic character which specifies the characteristics and defines the components of the record.

**Implementation-defined:** character position 07-08 reserve for bibliographic level (character position 07) and type of control (character position 08). Any position not defined contains blank.

**Character coding scheme:** character position 09 identifies the character coding scheme used in a record. In SOUL 2.0, it should always be a representing UCS/Unicode.

Encoding level: character position 17 identifies the type of data encoding in the record.

**Descriptive cataloguing form:** character position 18 identifies the cataloguing scheme used for rendering the record. In SOUL 2.0, it should always be a representing AACR-2.

**Linked record requirement:** character position 19 represents either need of the related record or related record not required.

## Fixed Field

SOUL 2.0 has included fixed field 008 for creating MARC 21 records. 008 is fixed field with 40 characters (00 to 39). Out of 40 characters following characters have to be selected from the drop down menu by the cataloguer while either creating new template for the field or editing the pre-defined template of the fixed field. SOUL 2.0 has pre-defined fixed field 008 for different type of documents and it also

provides option for the user to create their own template. Following are the character positions that need to be looked into at the time creating or modifying:

**Type of date/Publication status:** character position 06 represents either type of date or publication status.

**Illustrations:** character positions 18-21 represents illustrations of the items. Cataloguer needs to look at inside of the item for identifying the types of the illustrations such as maps, charts, tables, graph, etc.

**Target Audience:** character position 22 represents target audience of the item such as primary, adult, general, juvenile, etc.

**Form of Item:** character position 23 identifies the physical format of the item such as microfilms, microfiche, large print, electronic, etc.

**Nature of contents:** character position 24-27 represents nature of the contents identifying such as dictionary, encyclopaedia, atlas, handbooks, catalogue, technical report, treaties, etc.

**Government publication:** character position 28 identifies the item either of govt. publication or not. In case of govt. publication, provides values for different kind of govt. publication such as national/federal, local, international governmental, etc.

**Conference publication:** character position 29 is for identifying the item either of conference publication or not.

**Festschrift:** character position 30 represents the value for either festschrift or not a festschrift item.

**Index:** character position 31 is for either index or not an index item.

**Literary form:** character position 33 identifies the literary form of an item such as novel, short stories, drama, essays, poetry, etc.

**Biography:** character position 34 represents biographical information of an item such as autobiography, individual biography, collective biography, etc.

## Default MARC 21 Fields Used in the SOUL 2.0

Apart from the leader and the fixed field 008, SOUL 2.0 uses most of the important fields frequently used by the cataloguers. The fields which are included in the default template of SOUL 2.0 are given below. For full listings of all MARC 21 tags, indicators, and subfield codes, see MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data at <http://www.loc.gov/marc/>.

Definition and explanations term frequently used with regards to MARC21 records are as follows:

**Tags:** The tags (3-digit numbers) are followed by the names of the fields they represent. In this summary, and in the MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data, if a tag can appear more than once in one bibliographic record, it is labeled repeatable (R). If it can only be used once, it is labeled non-repeatable (NR). For example, a catalogue record can have several subjects, so the tags for subject added entries (6XX) are labeled repeatable (R).

**Indicators:** The use of indicators is explained in fields where they are used. Indicators are one-digit numbers. Beginning with the 010 field, in every field -- following the tag -- are two character positions, one for Indicator 1 and one for Indicator 2. The indicators are not actually defined in all fields, however. It is possible that

a 2nd indicator will be used, while the 1st indicator remains undefined (or vice versa). When an indicator is undefined, the character position will be represented by the blank space (in the manual '#' is taken for representing blank space).

**Subfield codes:** All the data in each field (beginning with the 010 field) is divided into subfields, each of which is preceded by a delimiter subfield code combination. The most common subfield codes used with each tag are shown. Each subfield code is preceded by the character \$, signifying a delimiter. The name of the subfield follows the code.

**Examples:** Examples follow the explanation for each field. For clarity, one space has been placed between the tag and the first indicator, one space has been placed between the second indicator and the first delimiter- subfield code, and one space has been inserted between the delimiter-subfield code and the subfield data.

### 020 - International Standard Book Number (ISBN) (R)

Indicators undefined.

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a** -- International Standard Book Number

**Example:** 020 ## \$a 0877547637

### 022 - International Standard Serial Number (ISSN) (R)

Indicator 1: Level of International Interest

# -- No level specified

0 -- Serial of international interest

1 -- Serial not of international interest

Indicator 2: Undefined

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a** -- International Standard Serial Number (NR)

**Example:** 022 0# \$a1560-1560

### 030 - CODEN Designation (R)

Indicator 1: Undefined

Indicator 2: Undefined

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a** -- CODEN (NR)

**Example:** 030 ## \$aJACSAT



**041 - Language Code (R)**

Indicators not used.

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

\$a -- Language

**Example:** 041 ## \$a eng

**080 Universal Decimal Classification Scheme (R)****082 Dewey Decimal Classification Scheme (R)****084 Other Classification Number (R)**

SOUL 2.0 is defined for any kind of the classification scheme. The classification scheme has to be selected by librarian at the time of installing the software. Above three schemes have been configured with the system. Any library who is using other than the UDC (Universal Decimal Classification) and DDC (Dewey Decimal Classification) schemes can use tag 084 (Other Classification Number). The library who is using Colon Classification can also use this system while putting the class number in the tag 084.

Indicators are not used.

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0

\$a -- Class number

**Example:** 080/082/084 ## \$a971.1/.2

**100 - Main Entry -- Personal name -- (primary author) (NR)**

Indicator 1: Type of personal name entry element

0--Forename

1 -- Surname (this is the most common form)

3 -- Family name

Indicator 2 undefined.

Indicator 2 became obsolete in 1990. Older records may display 0 or 1

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a**--Personal name

**\$d**-- Dates associated with a name (generally, year of birth)

**\$e**--Relator Term

**\$q**-- Fuller form of name

**Example:** 100 1# \$a Gregory, Ruth W. \$q (Ruth Wilhelme), \$d 1910-

### 110 - Main Entry -- Corporate name ®

Indicator 1: Type of corporate name entry element

0 -- Inverted name (not used with AACR2)

1 -- Jurisdiction name

2 -- Name in direct order

Indicator 2: Type of added entry.

See Indicator 2 under 700

# -- No information provided

2 -- Analytical entry

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a**-- Corporate name or jurisdiction name as entry element

**\$b**-- Subordinate unit (R)

**\$c**-- Location of meeting (NR)

**\$d**-- Date of meeting or treaty signing (R)

**\$e**-- Relator term (R)

**\$g**-- Miscellaneous information (NR)

**\$n**-- Number of part/section/meeting (R)

**Example:** 110 2# \$a Sunburst Communications (Firm)

**111 - Main Entry-Meeting Name (NR)**

Indicator 1: Type of meeting name entry element

0--Inverted name

1--Jurisdiction name

2 -- Name in direct order

Indicator2:Undefined

# - Undefined

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a**-- Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)

**\$c**-- Location of meeting (NR)

**\$d**-- Date of meeting (NR)

**\$e**-- Subordinate unit (R)

**\$f**-- Date of a work (NR)

**\$n**-- Number of part/section/meeting (R)

**\$t**-- Title of a work (NR)

**Example:** 111 2# \$aInternational Symposium on Quality Control (1974- )\$n(3rd :\$d1978 :\$cTokyo, Japan)

**130 - Main Entry -- Uniform title -- (NR)**

Indicator 1: Nonfiling characters

0-9 -- Number of nonfiling characters present (for initial articles, including spaces)

Indicator 2 undefined.

Indicator 2 became obsolete in 1990. (See 100 above.)

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a**-- Uniform title

**\$f**-- Date of a work

**\$h**-- Medium (NR)

**\$k**-- Form subheading (R)

**\$n**-- Number of part/section of a work (R)

**Example:** 130 0# \$a Bible. \$p O.T. \$p Psalms.

### 210 - Abbreviated title®

Indicator 1: Title added entry

0-- No added entry

1-- Added entry

Indicator 2: Type of title

#-- Abbreviated key title

0-- Other abbreviated title

Subfield used most often:

**\$a**-- Abbreviated title (NR)

**Example:** 210 0# \$aManage. improv. cost reduct. goals

### 222 - Key title (R)

Indicator 1: Undefined

Indicator 2: Nonfiling characters

0-- No nonfiling characters

1-9-- Number of nonfiling characters

Subfield used in SOUL 2.0:

\$a - Key title (NR)

\$b - Qualifying information (NR)

**Example: 222 #4 \$aDer Öffentliche Dienst \$b(Köln)**

### 245 - Title Statement (NR)

Indicator 1 : Title added entry

0 - No Title added entry

(Indicates a title main entry; i.e. no author is given)

1. – Title added entry

(the proper indicator when an author given in 1XX;  
the most Common Situation)

Indicator 2 : Nonfiling characters

0-9– Number of nonfiling characters present, including

spaces; usually set at zero, except when the title begins

with an article; e.g. for the robe, t he second indicator would  
be set to 4. The letters T, h, e, and the space following them  
are then ignored in alphabetizing titles. The will be

automatically filed under “r” – for Robe.

Sub-fields used in SOUL 2.0

\$a – Title proper

\$b – Reminder of title (subtitles, etc.)

\$c – Remainder of title page transcription/state of  
responsibility.

**Example: 245 14 \$a The DNA story :\$b a documentary history of  
gene cloning /\$c James D. Watson, John Tooze.**

**246 - Varying form of title (R)**

Indicator 1: Note/title added entry controller

1 -- Note, title added entry

3 -- No note, title added entry

Indicator 2+: Type of title

# -- No information provided

0 -- Portion of title

1 -- Parallel title

4 -- Cover title

8 -- Spine title

Subfield used most often:

**\$i** -- Display text (NR)

**\$a** -- Title proper/short title (NR)

**\$b** -- Remainder of title (NR)

**\$n** -- Number of part/section of a work (R)

**\$p** -- Name of part/section of a work (R)

**Example: 246 1# \$jAlternate Issues Published with  
Title : \$a Chicago, Daily Telegraph**

**247 - Former title (R)**

Indicator 1: Title added entry

0 -- No added entry

1 -- Added entry

Indicator 2: Note controller

0 -- Display note

1 -- Do not display note

Subfield used most often:

**\$a** -- Title (NR)

**\$b** -- Remainder of title (NR)

**\$f** -- Date or sequential designation (NR)

**Example:** 247 10 \$aJournalism bulletin \$fMar. 1924-Nov. 1927

### 250 - Edition statement (NR)

Indicators undefined.

Subfield used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a** -- Edition statement

**\$b** -- Remainder of edition statement (NR)

**Example:** 250 ## \$a 6th ed./\$b revised by Dr. M.A.Gopinath

### 256 - Edition statement (NR)

Indicators undefined.

Subfield used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a** -- Computer file characteristics (NR)

**Example:** 256 ## \$aComputer data (2 files : 876,000, 775,000 records).

**260 - Publication, distribution, etc. (Imprint) (R)**

Indicator 1: Sequence of publishing statements

#-- No information provided

Indicator 2: Undefined

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a**-- Place of publication, distribution, etc. (R)

**\$b**-- Name of publisher, distributor, etc. (R)

**\$c**-- Date of publication, distribution, etc. (R)

**Example:** 260 ## \$a New York :\$b Chelsea House,\$c 1986.

**300 - Physical description (R)**

Indicators undefined.

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a**-- Extent (number of pages) (R)

**\$b**-- Other physical details (usually illustration information)

**\$c**-- Dimensions (cm.) (R)

**\$e**-- Accompanying material (for example, "teacher's guide" or "manual")

**Example:** 300 ## \$a 139 p. :\$b ill. ;\$c 24 cm.

**310 - Current Publication Frequency (NR)**

Indicators undefined.

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a**-- Current publication frequency (NR)



**\$b** -- Date of current publication frequency (NR)

**Example:** 310 ## \$aMonthly, \$bJan. 1984

### 362 - Dates of Publication and/or Sequential Designation (R)

Indicator 1: Format of date

0 -- Formatted style

1 -- Unformatted note

Indicator 2: Undefined

Subfield used most often:

**\$a** -- Dates of publication and/or sequential designation (NR)

**Example:** 362 0# \$aVol. 1, no. 1 (Apr. 1983)-v. 1, no. 3 (June 1983)

### 490 - Series statement (No added entry is traced from field) (R)

Indicator 1: Specifies whether series is traced (whether an 8XX tag is also present, tracing the series differently)

0 -- Series not traced

1 -- Series traced differently (8XX is in record)

Indicator 2 undefined.

Subfield used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a** -- Series statement

**\$v** -- Volume number

**\$x** -- International Standard Serial Number

**Example:** 490 1# \$a Colonial American craftsmen

**500 - General note (R)**

Indicators undefined.

Subfield used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a** -- General note (Used when no specialized note field has been defined for the information. Examples: Notes regarding the index; the source of the title; variations in title; descriptions of the nature, form, or scope of the item.)

**Example: 500 ## \$a Includes index.**

**501 - With Note (R)**

Indicators are undefined

Subfield used in SOUL 2.0

**\$a** -- With note

**Example: 501 ## \$a With: The reformed school / John Dury. London : Printed for R. Wasnothe, [1850]**

**502 - Dissertation Note (R)**

This field is used for theses database for rendering of thesis records.

Indicators are undefined

Subfield used in SOUL 2.0

**\$a** -- Dissertation note

**Example: 502 ## \$a Thesis (Ph.D.) –Ravishankar University, Raipur, 1986.**



**504 - Bibliography, etc. note (R)**

Indicators undefined.

Subfield used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a** -- Bibliography, etc. note

**Example:** 504 ## \$a Includes bibliographical references.

**505 - Formatted contents note (R)**

Indicator 1: Type of contents note

0 -- Complete contents

1 -- Incomplete contents (used with multivolume set when some volumes are not yet published)

2 -- Partial contents

Indicator 2: Level of content designation

# -- Basic

Subfield used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a** -- Formatted contents note

**Example:** 505 0# \$a Pride and prejudice – Emma – Northanger Abbey

**510 - Citation/References Note (R)**

Indicator 1: Coverage/location in source

0 - Coverage unknown

1 - Coverage complete

2 - Coverage is selective

3 - Location in source not given

4 - Location in source given

Indicator 2: undefined (SOUL 2.0 defines it internally in system)

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a**-- Name of source

**\$b**-- Coverage of source

**\$c**-- Location within source

**\$x**-- International Standard Serial Number

**Example:** 510 1# \$aIndex Medicus,\$x0019-3879,\$bv1n1, 1984-

### 520 - Summary, etc. note (R)

Indicator 1: Display constant controller

#-- Summary

1-- Review

2-- Scope and content

3-- Abstract

Indicator 2 undefined

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a**-- Summary, abstract, or annotation

**\$b**-- Expansion of summary note

**Example:** 520 ## \$aThis basic guide to parliamentary procedure tells how to conduct and participate in a meeting properly.

**525 - Supplement Note (R)**

Indicators undefined.

Subfield used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a** -- Supplement note

**Example:** 525 ## \$aSupplements accompany some issues.

**546 - Language Note (R)**

Indicators undefined.

Subfield used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a** -- Language note

**Example:** 546 ## \$aln Hungarian; summaries in French, German, or Russian.

**600 - Subject added entry -- Personal name (R)**

Indicator 1: Type of personal name entry element

0 -- Forename

1 -- Surname (this is the most common form)

3 -- Family name

Indicator 2: Subject heading system/thesaurus (identifies the specific list or file which was used)

0 -- Library of Congress Subject Headings

1 -- LC subject headings for children's literature

2 -- Medical Subject Headings

3 -- National Agricultural Library subject authority file

- 4 -- Source not specified
- 5 -- Canadian Subject Headings
- 6 -- Répertoire de vedettes-matière

(Note regarding Sear's List of subject headings: The MARC 21 format does not provide an assigned indicator. Therefore, an indicator of 4 is used.)

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

- \$a** -- Personal name (surname and forename)
- \$d** -- Dates associated with a name
- \$e** -- Relator term
- \$q** -- Fuller form of name

**Example:** 600 10 \$a Shakespeare, William, \$d 1564-1616

### 610 - Subject added entry -- Corporate name (R)

Indicator 1: Type of corporate name entry element

- 0 -- Inverted name (not used with AACR2)
- 1 -- Jurisdiction name
- 2 -- Name in direct order

Indicator 2: Subject heading system/thesaurus.

See indicator 2 under 600

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

- \$a** -- Corporate name or jurisdiction name as entry element

- \$b** -- Subordinate unit
- \$c** -- Location of meeting
- \$d** -- Date of meeting or treaty signing
- \$e** -- Relator term
- \$n** -- Number of part/section/meeting
- \$g** -- Miscellaneous information

**Example:** 610 10 \$a United States. \$b Army Air Forces

### 611 - Subject Added Entry-Meeting Name (R)

Indicator 1: Type of meeting name entry element

- 0 -- Inverted name
- 1 -- Jurisdiction name
- 2 -- Name in direct order

Indicator 2: Thesaurus

See Indicator 2 of 600

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

- \$a** -- Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)
- \$c** -- Location of meeting (NR)
- \$d** -- Date of meeting (NR)
- \$e** -- Subordinate unit (R)
- \$f** -- Date of a work (NR)
- \$n** -- Number of part/section/meeting (R)
- \$t** -- Title of a work (NR)

**Example:** 611 20\$aVatican Council\$n(2nd :\$d1962-1965).  
\$tDecretumde presbyterorum ministerio et vita

**630 - Subject Added Entry-Uniform Title (R)**

Indicator 1: Nonfiling characters

0-9 - Number of nonfiling characters

Indicator 2: Thesaurus

See Indicator 2 of 600.

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a** -- Uniform title

**\$f** -- Date of a work

**\$h** -- Medium

**\$k** -- Form subheading

**\$n** -- Number of part/section of a work

**Example:** 630 00 \$aBible.\$kManuscripts.

**648 - Subject Added Entry-Chronological Term (R)**

Indicator 1: undefined (SOUL 2.0 defines it internally in system)

Indicator 2: Thesaurus

See Indicator 2 of 600.

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a** -- Chronological term

**\$v** -- Form subdivision (R)

**\$x** -- General subdivision (R)

**\$y** -- Chronological subdivision (R)

**\$z** -- Geographic subdivision (R)

**Example:** 648 00 \$a1900-1999.



**650 - Subject added entry -- Topical term (R)**

Indicator 1: Level of subject

# -- No information provided

0 -- No level specified

1 -- Primary

2 -- Secondary

Indicator 2: Subject heading system/thesaurus

See Indicator 2 of 600.

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a** -- Topical term or geographic name entry element

**\$b** -- Topical term following geographic name entry element

**\$c** -- Location of event

**\$v** -- Form subdivision (R)

**\$x** -- General subdivision (R)

**\$y** -- Chronological subdivision (R)

**\$z** -- Geographic subdivision (R)

**Example: 650 #0 \$a Theater \$z United States \$v  
Biography \$v Dictionaries.**

Notice that subfields \$v, \$x, and \$z in the 650 field are repeatable. Subfields \$v, \$x, \$y, and \$z do not have to be in alphabetical order. They will be in the order prescribed by the subject heading scheme being used.

**651 - Subject added entry -- Geographic name (R)**

Indicator 1: undefined. (SOUL 2.0 defines it internally in system)

Indicator 2: Subject heading system/thesaurus.

See indicator 2 under 600

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a** -- Geographic name

**\$v** -- Form subdivision (R)

**\$x** -- General subdivision (R)

**\$y** -- Chronological subdivision (R)

**\$z** -- Geographic subdivision (R)

**Example:** 651 #0 \$a United States \$x History \$v Chronology.

Notice that subfields \$v, \$x, and \$z in the 651 field are repeatable. Subfields \$v, \$x, \$y, and \$z do not have to be in alphabetical order. They will be in the order prescribed by the subject heading scheme being used.

**653 - Index Term-Uncontrolled (R)**

Indicator 1: Level of index term

# - No information provided

0 - No level specified

1 - Primary

2 - Secondary

Indicator 2: not defined in SOUL 2.0.

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a** -- Uncontrolled term (R)

**Example:** 653 ## \$a India \$a History.

**654 - Subject Added Entry-Faceted Topical Terms (R)**

Indicator 1: Level of subject

# - No information provided

0 - No level specified

1 - Primary

2 - Secondary

Indicator 2: undefined. (SOUL 2.0 defines it internally in system)

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a** -- Focus term (R)

**\$b** -- Non-focus term(R)

**\$c** -- Facet/hierarchy designation (R)

**\$v** -- Form subdivision (R)

**\$y** -- Chronological subdivision (R)

**\$z** -- Geographic subdivision (R)

**Example:** 654 0# \$cr\$alandscape gardens\$cy\$b18thcentury\$cz\$bEngland.

**700 -Added entry -- Personal name (R)**

Indicator 1: Type of personal name entry element

0 -- Forename

1 -- Surname (this is the most common form)

3 -- Family name

Indicator 2: Type of added entry

# -- No information provided (most common; co-authors, editors, etc.)

2 -- Analytical entry (The values for Indicator 2 changed in 1994 with Format Integration, and older records may display additional values. An analytical entry involves an author/title of an item contained in a work.)

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a** -- Personal name

**\$q** -- Fuller form of name

**\$d** -- Dates associated with a name (generally, year of birth)

**\$e** -- Relator term (such as ill.) (R)

**Example:** 700 1# \$a Baldrige, Letitia.

### 710 - Added entry -- Corporate name (R)

Indicator 1: Type of corporate name entry element

0 -- Inverted name (not used with AACR2)

1 -- Jurisdiction name

2 -- Name in direct order

Indicator 2: Type of added entry.

See Indicator 2 under 700

# -- No information provided

2 -- Analytical entry

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a** -- Corporate name or jurisdiction name as entry element

**\$b** -- Subordinate unit (R)

- \$c** -- Location of meeting (NR)
- \$d** -- Date of meeting or treaty signing (R)
- \$e** -- Relator term (R)
- \$g** -- Miscellaneous information (NR)
- \$n** -- Number of part/section/meeting (R)

**Example:** 710 2# \$a Indian Institute of Technology \$bMumbai

### 711 -Added Entry -- Meeting Name (R)

Indicator 1: Type of meeting name entry element

- 0 -- Inverted name
- 1 -- Jurisdiction name
- 2 -- Name in direct order

Indicator 2: Type of added entry

- # - No information provided
- 2 - Analytical entry

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

- \$a** -- Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)
- \$c** -- Location of meeting (NR)
- \$d** -- Date of meeting (NR)
- \$e** -- Subordinate unit (R)
- \$f** -- Date of a work (NR)
- \$n** -- Number of part/section/meeting (R)
- \$t** -- Title of a work (NR)

**Example:** 711 2# \$aInternational CALIBER 2009\$n(7<sup>th</sup> :  
\$d25<sup>th</sup> to 27<sup>th</sup> February 2009\$cPondicherry University,  
Puducherry)

**730 -Added Entry --Uniform Title (R)**

Indicator 1: Non-filling characters

0-9 - Number of nonfiling characters

Indicator 2: Type of added entry

# - No information provided

2 - Analytical entry

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a** -- Uniform title

**\$f** -- Date of a work

**\$h** -- Medium (NR)

**\$k** -- Form subheading (R)

**\$n** -- Number of part/section of a work (R)

*Example: 730 0# \$aGandhi. \$hMotion Picture*

**773 -Host Item Entry (R)**

Indicator 1: Note controller

0 -- Display note

1 -- Do not display note

Indicator 2: Display constant controller

# -- In

8 -- No display constant generated

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a** – Main entry heading (NR)

**\$b** – Edition (NR)

**\$d** – Place, publisher and date of publication (NR)

**\$g** – Relationship information (R)  
**\$h** – Physical description (NR)

**\$s** – Uniform title (NR)

**\$t** – Title (NR)

**\$w** – Record control number (R)

**\$x** – International Standard Serial Number (NR)

**\$y** – CODEN Designation (NR)

**Example:** 773 0# \$aHamilton, Milton W. (Milton Wheaton), 1901-\$tSir William Johnson and the Indians of New York.\$d[Albany] : University of the State of New York, State Education Dept., Office of State History, 1967\$w(DLC)###68066801# [Host item identified by author, title, and record number.]

### 850 - Holding Institution (R)

Indicators undefined:

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$a** – Holding institution (R)

**Example:** 850 ## \$aAAP\$aCU

### 856 - Electronic Location and Access (R)

Indicator 1: Access method

# - No information provided

0 - Email

1 - FTP

2 - Remote login (Telnet)

3 - Dial-up

Indicator 2: Relationship

# - No information provided

0 - Resource

1 - Version of resource

2 - Related resource

8 - No display constant generated

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

\$u - Uniform Resource Identifier (R)

**Example:** 856 0# \$u <http://www.inflibnet.ac.in/publication/>

### 852 - Location (R)

Indicator 1: Shelving scheme

# - No information provided

0 - Library of Congress classification

1 - Dewey Decimal classification

2 - National Library of Medicine classification

3 - Superintendent of Documents classification

4 - Shelving control number



5 - Title

6 - Shelved separately

8 - Other scheme

Indicator 2: Shelving order

# - No information provided

0 - Not enumeration

1 - Primary enumeration

2 - Alternative enumeration

Subfields used in SOUL 2.0:

**\$p**-- Piece Designation

**\$a**-- Location

**\$b**-- Collection Type

**\$c**-- Shelving location

**\$f**-- Coded location qualifier

**\$k**-- Call number prefix

**\$m**-- Call number suffix

**\$t**-- Copy number

Following local information have been added in the Location field (852)

Material Type, Status of the item, Department, Budget, Price, Supplier, Invoice Number, Invoice Date, Date of Acquisition.

**Example: 852 0# \$p T101\$bText book\$k001.89\$mTEL/RCH\$f  
Main Library\$aStack Room\$cGround Floor**

## Keyword Index

Accessioning	58, 59	Book Transfer	107
Bound Serial	150	Budget	33
Imported Data	86	Allocation	35
Acquisition	46	Expense Head	34
Master	9	Income Head	34
Approval		Transfer	36
Book-Approve	50	Calender	23
Book-Direct Approval	51	Cataloguing	70
Book-Selection	49	Export	84
Gratis Items	50	Import	83
Letter-Book	52	Master	11
Serial	132	Template	15
Article Indexing	129	Data Entry	73
Auto Assign		Template-based	81
Accession No	59	Theses	80
Auto Letter Number	6	Title	74
Barcode	88	Check in	144
Settings	6	Update	145
Bibliography Delete	18	Circulation	90
Bibliographic Service	86	Master	19
Binder		Circulation Group	104
<i>see Vendor</i>		Class No	78
Binding		Classification Scheme	15
Book	119	Collection Type	7
Serial-Commercial	149	Connection Settings	8
Serial-Inhouse	149	Corporate Name	75
Set Preparation	149	Country	40
Binding Type	28	Course/Designation	39
Book bank	103	Currency Master	32
Book Card	88	Current Awareness	86
Settings	6	Daily Visitors	107
		Damaged	

Book	121	ILL	111
Database Connection		Borrowing	111
<i>see Connection Settings</i>		Lending	115
Data-Entry	73	New Library	43
Authority	82	Import	
Template	15	Catalogue	83
Delivery Mode	28	CCF	85
Department	38	MARCXML	86
Departmental Library	43	Import MARC	59,70,83
Discount		Institute Detail	37
Invoice process	63	Institutional Library	43
Overall	63	Invoice Process	
Duplicate Check		Book	63
New Request	47	Bound Serial	151
Edit		Discount	63
Catalogue	80	Serial	140
Serial-Title	128	Issue	
Edition Master		Book	97
Serial	29	Book bank	103
Email Settings	4	Book-On premises	101
Export	84	Group	104
MARC	84	ILL Library	115
Export & Delete		Issue Slip	
Rejected	51	Book	97
File Attachment	78	Label	
Fixed Field	14,74,125	Settings	6
Frequency	27	Language	41
General Master	31	Leader	12,74,125
Global Replace	18	Letter	
Global Search	18	Auto Number	6
Gratis Items	49	Book-Approval	52
Group Circulation		Header Image	4
<i>see Circulation Group</i>		ILL Library	112
		Layout	5

Purchase Order-Book	57	Cataloguing	80
Purchase Order-Serial	139	OPAC	154
Reminder-Serial	147	Boolean Search	157
Location	77	Member	158
Lost-Book	117	Simple Search	154
Meeting Name	76	Order	
Member		Receive-Book	58
Category	19	Serial-Binding	149
Privileges	19	Serial-Cancel	138
Type	24	Serial-New	136
Member Card		Book	53
Customization	24	Book-Cancel	55
Image Modification	4	Book-Direct	55
Member Login	107	Book-New	53
Membership	90	Overdue Charges	101, 103
Copy	92	Payment	
Delete -Group	93	Account Section-Book	68
Delete -Single	93	Account Section-Serial	142
New	90	Book	63
Photo	90	Book-Report	69
Renewal-Group	94	Bound Serial	152
Renewal-Single	94	Process-Book	65
Merge Record	59	Serial	140
Missing		Settlement	66
Book	122	Personal Name	75
Serial-Issue	147	Physical Description	77
New Request		Physical Media	43
Book	47	Privileges	
ILL	111	ILL Library	43
Serial	131	Member	19
No-Due Certificate	92,95,102	Publisher	
Non-receipt		<i>see Vendor</i>	
Serial	147	Cataloguing	76
Notes			

Purchase Order		Member login	109
<i>see Letter</i>		On-premises issue	109
Receive		Overdue	108
Book	58	Overdue Pending	109
ILL Book	112	Payment-Book	69
Refund Process		Request	51
Book	67	Reserved	108
Serial	142	Returned	108
Reminder		Serial-Order	139
Book-Issued	100,104	Serial-Request	135
ILL Library	116	Template	17
Purchase Order	57	Vendor-Acquisition	10
Renew		Vendor-Serial	30
Book-Issued	99	Cataloguing	87
Serial	137	Cataloguing-Advanced	87
Report		Cataloguing-Basic	87
Binding	152	Serial-Holding	131
Budget	45	Request	
Budget Transfer	45	ILL Library	112
Category List	26	Reserve	
Check in	148	Book	100
Circulation	108	Reset Transaction	26
Currency	45	Return	
Delivery Mode	30	Book	98
Fine Payer	109	Book- On premises	102
Frequency	30	Group	104
Group issue	109	ILL Book	114
Institute	45	Schedule Generation	
Institute Details	40	Serial	144
Institute List	26	Search	
Invoice-Book	69	<i>see OPAC</i>	
Issued	108	Book	102
Member	95	Member	92
Member Category	26	Serial	124

Master	27	Template	
MARC Entry	125	Authority	15
Merge to Database	134	Bibliography	15
Title Entry	127	Transaction	96
Title Holding	129	Reset	26
Title Holding	131	Transfer-Book	
Series Statement	78	<i>see Book Transfer</i>	
Spine Label	88	Uniform Name	76
Settings	6	URL	79
Stock Varification	105	User	2
Subject Added Entry	79	Group	2
Subject Heading	41	Password	3
Subscription		Vendor	
Serial	136	Acquisition	9
Suggestion		Serial	27
Acquisition	47	Withdrawal	
Serial	131	Book	123
Supplier			
<i>see Vendor</i>			
System Settings	4		

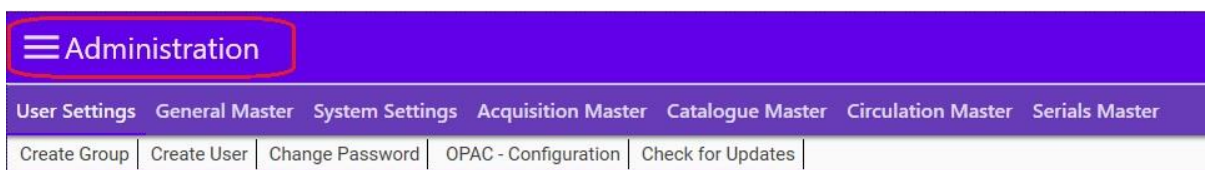


# SOUL 3.0: Administration Module

**Username: superuser**

**Password: su**

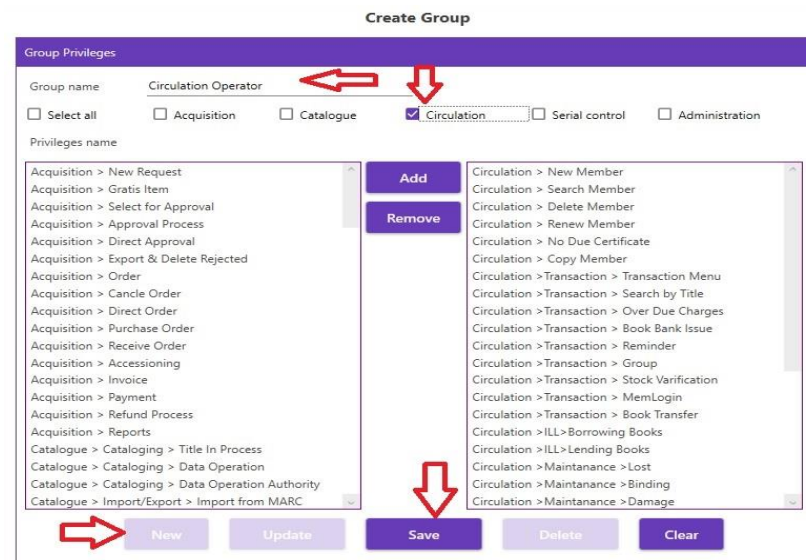
Set rules and feed standard information needed for our LMS. Select Administration from the menu which, in turn, provides following options:



**Administration → User Settings:**



**User Settings → Create Group:**



Click on New button -> Assign Group Name -> Select individual module from check box or sub module from the list below -> Save. Here, you have an option to add/remove individual privileges from the group.

## User Settings → Create User:

**Create User**

Name and Password			
Username	System User	Password	•••
Group name	Circulation Operator	Verify Password	•••

**Comment**

Comment	SOUL 3.0		
Secret Question	which module		
Answer	circulation		

**Location**

Library	Main Library	Pin code	382007
Address	Infocity		
City	Gandhinagar	Country	India
State	Gujarat	Extension	
Phone	1234567890		
Mobile	0123456789		
Email	user@example.com		

**Buttons:** Browse | Add New | Save | Delete | Clear

Click on Add New button -> enter username -> select group name from drop down list -> assign password -> enter comment, secret question and answer -> add the necessary location information and click on "Save" to create user.

## User Settings → Change Password:

Password for each user or a group can be changed through this option. Password change is allowed only when old password is entered and secret question is answered correctly. It is also being requested to change "Superuser" password by change password option in below screen.

**Change Password**

Username	superuser
Old Password	••
New Password	•••••
Verify New Password	•••••
Secret Question	What is favourite number
Answer	•••••

**Change Password**



## User Settings → OPAC - Configuration:

**Web OPAC / OPAC - Configuration**

User Name .....  
Librarian Name ..... Status ▾  
Password .....  
Verify Password .....  
Remark .....

**Add** **Edit** **Delete** **Save**

**Path Configuration**

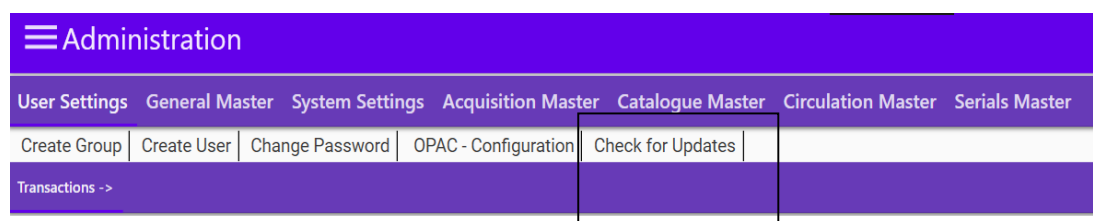
Index Path D:\30Lib **Select Path**  
Web-Service Path http://localhost/websern/OPAC.asmx

**Save** **Edit**

- Using this option, admin user of web opac can be created who can use import the members self-registered on web opac portal.
- In case of Index path/web service path is getting changed, you may change using this option.

**NOTE: If you are not aware about this functionality, please do not try to change as it may create problems with functionalities. It should be done by Administrator/Superuser.**

## User Settings → Check for updates:



- If software update is available then using this function you can update the software by single click

## Administration → General Master:



## General Master → Institute Details:

### To add the institute details;

Click “Add” button -> fill in the code and institute details-> Save

The screenshot shows the 'Institute Details' form. It has a table with columns: Code, Description, Address line 1, Address line 2, City, PIN, Phone, Fax, Email. The first row is highlighted with a red box. Below the table are buttons for 'Add', 'Update', and 'Delete'. To the right of the table is a form with fields for Code (01), Name (Home Institute), Address (Infocity), City (Gandhinagar), Pin (123456), Phone (1234567), Fax, and Email (home@example.com). There are 'Save' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom right. Red arrows point from the 'Add' button to the 'Code' field and from the 'Save' button to the 'Address' field.

### To add the department details;

First select the institute name -> Click “Add” button from department details window -> To the right side fill in the code and department name -> Tick mark the check box to copy address same as institute-> add email -> “Save”.

Continue the same flow to add any number of departments.

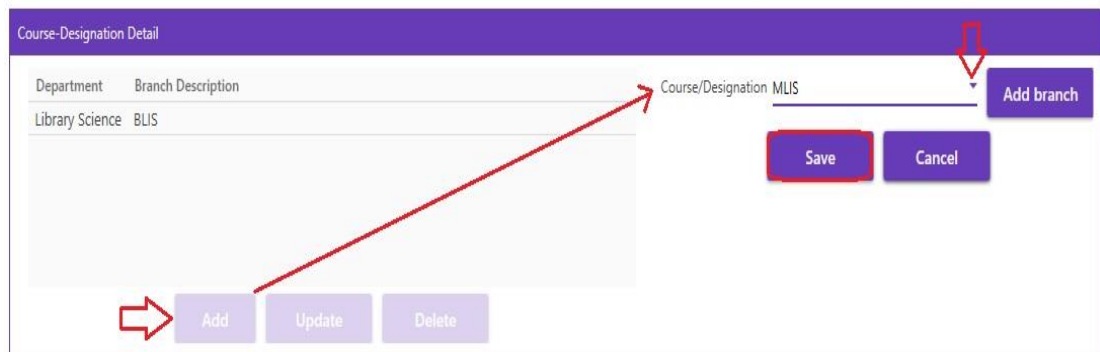
The screenshot shows the 'Department Details' form. It has a table with columns: Code, Department, Address line 1, Address line 2, City, PIN, Phone, Fax, E-Mail. The first row is highlighted with a red box. Below the table are buttons for 'Add', 'Update', and 'Delete'. To the right of the table is a form with fields for Code (03), Name (Computer Science), Address (Infocity), City (Gandhinagar), Pin (123456), Phone (1234567), Fax, and Email (cs@example.com). There is a checked checkbox for 'Address same as institute'. There are 'Save' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom right. Red arrows point from the 'Add' button to the 'Code' field and from the 'Save' button to the 'Email' field.

### To add Course/Designation

First select the Department from Department details window ->

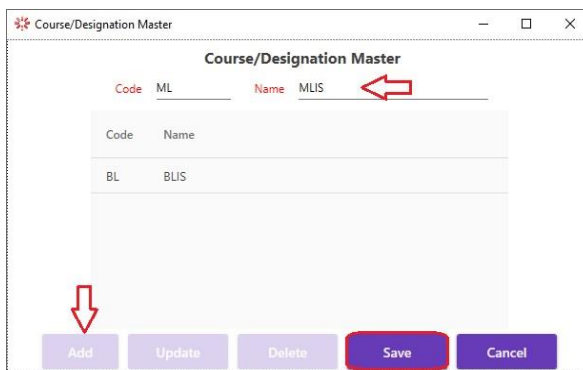
Click “Add” button from Course/Designation details window -> To the right side select Course/Designation from the drop-down list -> Save.

If the required course/designation is not available under chosen department please add it by clicking 'Add Branch" button.

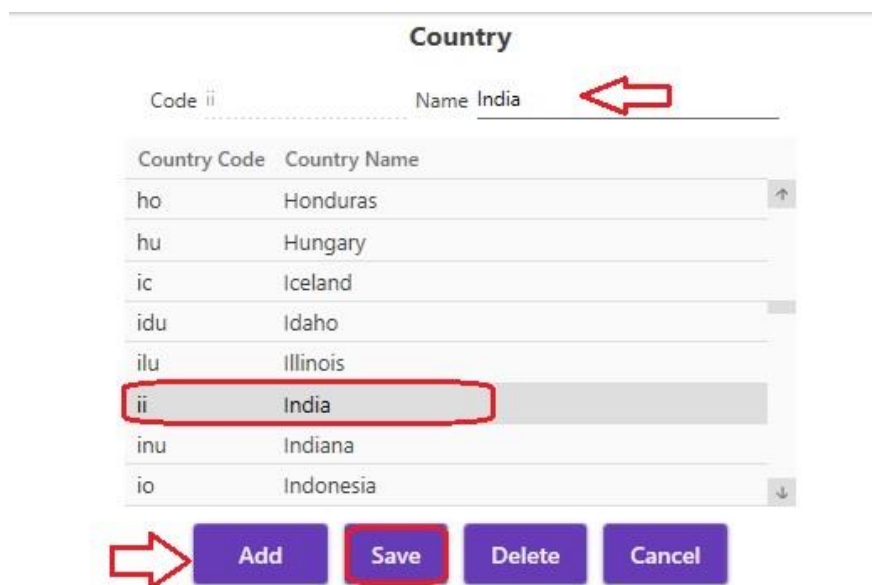


### Course/Designation Master;

Add Branch → Add → Code → Name → Save.




### General Master → Country:



Country → Add → Code → Name → Save.

## General Master → Currency:






**Currency**

Currency Code  Date  

Currency  Conversion Rate

Country

Code	Currency	Conversion Rate	Country	Date
AED	United Arab Emirates Dirhams	19.23	United Arab Emirates	04/11/2019
AFN	Afghanistan Afghanis	0.90	Afghanistan	04/11/2019
ALL	Albania Leke	0.64	Albania	04/11/2019
ARS	Argentina Pesos	1.18	Argentina	04/11/2019
AUD	Australia Dollars	48.82	Australia	04/11/2019
BBD	Barbados Dollars	35.07	Barbados	04/11/2019
BDT	Bangladesh Taka	0.83	Bangladesh	04/11/2019
BGL	Bulgaria Leva	40.36	Bulgaria	04/11/2019
BHD	Bahrain Dinars	187.41	Bahrain	04/11/2019
BMD	Bermuda Dollars	70.65	Afghanistan	04/11/2019
BRR	Brazil Reais	17.73	Brazil	04/11/2019

**Add:** Select Currency -> Enter Currency Code -> Currency -> Country -> Date -> Conversion Rate -> and 'Save'. If Code/Country it will allow you to add the new currency with requisite details.

**Modify:** Double click on the first column of the currency you wish to modify edit details and click 'Save'.

**Delete:** To delete any record, double click on first column, select the currency you wish to delete. 'Delete' button will get activated. Click it to delete the desired currency permanently from the database.

## General Master → Budget Management:

 — □ ×

**Budget Head** **Category**

Budget Code   Income 

Budget Description   Expense

**Budget Head Entry**

**Budget Head**

Budget Code: BK

Budget Description: Books

Budget Expiry Date: 31/03/2021

**Category**

Income

Expense

Buttons: Clear, Save, Close

To Create new Income/Expenditure Head, select 'Budget' -> On left side box of Budget Process screen click <Add>, Enter 'Code' and 'Heading' for Income/Expenditure as needed.

**Budget Income**

Income Head: Union Grant Commission

Financial Year: 2020 To 2021

Opening Balance: 0

Received Amount: 1000000

Total Amount: 1000000

Date: 01/04/2020

Remarks:

Buttons: Clear, Save, Close

### To receive/add amount in Income Head.

First select Income from right side window-> Add button below -> select Income Head from dropdown -> Give financial year -> opening balance will be carried forward from previous year closing / pending balance of the same Income head (You can make it zero if you don't want to carry forward it) -> Fill in the received amount-> Date and remarks.

## To allocate amount in Expenditure Head.

Budget Expenditure

From Income From Expense

Period from 2020 To 2021

Income

Income Source Union Grant Commission Available 100000 Balance 40000

Allocation

Date 01/04/2020 Status Active Inactive

Expense Source Books

Opening 0 Allocated Amount 60000 Total Amount 60000

Clear Close Save

First select Expenditure from right side window -> Add button below -> From Income/From Expense -> Fill in Period from and To -> Select Income Source/Expense Source from dropdown menu -> Select Expense Source from dropdown menu -> Fill in Allocated Amount -> Save. In Expense allocation also it will give previous year closing/pending balance of the same Expense head. You may carry forward it or make it zero as per the requirement.

The same way you may allocate the amount from one Expense head to another Expense head.

## General Master → Budget Transfer:

Budget Transfer

Transfer ID 15062001 Date 15/06/2020

Source

Financial Year From 2020 To 2021

Source Budget Books Available Amount 60000

Destination

Financial Year From 2020 To 2021

Destination Budget Serials Available Amount 40000

Transfer Amount 10000 Remarks


Add Save

## To transfer/reallocate amounts from one Income/Expense Head to another;


Specify Financial Year of the Source Budget Head → Select Source Budget Head from drop-down Menu → Available amount will automatically appear → Specify amount needed to be transferred → Feed authorisation information in 'Remark' → Choose Financial Year of the Destination Budget Head → Select Destination Budget Head from drop-down Menu → Save the record 'Budget updated message will appear.

## General Master → Language:

**Language**

Code: eng Name: English 


Language Code	Language
dyu	Dyula
dzo	Dzongkha
efi	Efik
egy	Egyptian
eka	Ekajuk
elx	Elamite
<b>eng</b>	<b>English</b>
enm	English, Middle (1100-1500)
epo	Esperanto
est	Estonian
ewe	Ewe
ewo	Ewondo
fan	Fang

 **Add** **Save** **Delete**


Language → Add button → Assign Code → Name → Save.

## General Master → Subject:

**Subject**

Classification Code: 020 Subject Name: Library & information sciences 


Classification Number	Subject Name
685	Leather, fur goods & related products
026	Libraries for specific subjects
<b>020</b>	<b>Library &amp; information sciences</b>
025	Library operations
021	Library relationships
570	Life sciences biology
535	Light & infrared & ultraviolet phenomena
410	Linguistics
800	Literature & rhetoric
895	Literatures of East & Southeast Asia
830	Literatures of Germanic languages
879	Literatures of other Italic languages
890	Literatures of other languages

 **Add** **Save** **Delete** **Cancel**


Subject → Add button → Classification Code → Subject Name → Save.

## General Master → Physical Media:

**Physical Media**

Code: 990      Description: Bound Volumes 

Code	Description
990	Bound Volumes
030	Braille
100	CD-ROM
099	Dharm
145	Irregular Serial
050	Laser/Optical
980	Loose Issue
040	Magnetic
115	Meeting Documents
150	Monographic Serials
900	Others
135	Patent
105	Reports


Add
Save
Delete

Physical Media → Add button → Assign Code → Description → Save.

## General Master → Report:

Administration

User Settings   System Settings   Acquisition Master   Catalogue Master   Circulation Master   Serials Master   **General Master**

Institute Details   Country   Currency   Budget Management   Budget Transfer   Language   Subject   Physical Media   **Reports**

Transactions ->

- Currency Report
- Budget Report
- Budget Transfer Report
- Institute Report

## Currency Report:

You can see the display of all entered currency, their codes and conversion rates.

Updated Between 15/06/2020 To 15/06/2020 Display

Updated After 15/06/2020

**Currency Report**

List of Currencies modified between '15/6/2020' And '15/6/2020'

Country Name	Currency Name	Currency Code	Conversion Rate	Date of Conversion
Germany	Euro	EUR	85.58	15/06/2020
United Kingdom	United Kingdom Pounds	GBP	95.33	15/06/2020
United States	United States Dollars	USD	75.99	15/06/2020

Printed On : 15/06/2020 1/1

Report generated by-SOUL 3.0



### Budget Report:

You can see the current status of each budget head. The report can be generated by using Income-Head and Expense-Head and the sub-report will give you the Income / Expense head relationship with the amount allocated in each as well as the committed and spent amount during order and invoice process.

Select Category Income Year Between 2020 And 2021 Display

---

1 of 1 100% Find | Next

### Budget Report

Report by Income Category and Year between 2020 and 2021

Budget Name	Category	Year	Opening Balance	Received Amt.	Committed Amt.	Spent Amt.	Available Amt.
Union Grant Commission	Income	2020-2021	0.00	100000.00	0.00	100000.00	0.00

Expense Source	Opening Balance	Received Amt.	Total Received Amt.	Available Amt.
Books	0.00	60000.00	60000.00	50000.00
Serials	0.00	10000.00	50000.00	50000.00
Serials	0.00	40000.00	50000.00	50000.00

Printed On : 15/06/2020 1/1  
 Report generated by-SOUL 3.0

### Budget Transfer Report:

You can list all budget transfer operations carried out between specific periods.

Search Between Date From 15/06/2020 To 15/06/2020 Display

---

1 of 1 100% Find | Next

### Budget Transfer

Report by Date between 15/6/2020 and 15/6/2020

Source Budget	Period	Destination Budget	Period	Transaction Date	Amount Trferred	Remarks
Books	2020 - 2021	Serials	2020 - 2021	15/06/2020	10,000.00	
<b>Total</b>					10,000.00	

Printed On : 15/06/2020 1/1  
 Report generated by-SOUL 3.0

## Institute Report:

You can see hierarchical list of Institutes, Departments and Branch within each institute.

Select Option Institute Select Home Institute Display

Institute / Department / Branch List

Report by Institute-Home Institute

Institute Code	Institute Name
01	Home Institute Infocity, Gandhinagar - 123456 Phone : 1234567 Fax : Email : home@example.com
Department : 02 Library Science	
Branch :	
BL	BLIS
ML	MLIS

Printed On : 15/06/2020 1/1  
Report generated by-SOUL 3.0

## Administration → System Settings:

Administration

User Settings System Settings Acquisition Master Catalogue Master Circulation Master Serials Master General Master

Email & SMS Settings Image Upload Letter Layout Label Setting Letter Number Setting Collection Type Library Information Database Backup Theme Configuration

## System Settings → Email & SMS Settings:

Administration

User Settings General Master System Settings Acquisition Master Catalogue Master Circulation Master Serials Master

Email & SMS Settings Image Upload Letter Layout Label Setting Letter Number Setting Collection Type Library Information Theme Configuration

Email Configuration SMS - Text Email - Text

Email Configuration

Domain Name example.com

SMTP Server smtp.example.com

Port 999

Authorized Email id user@example.com

Username user

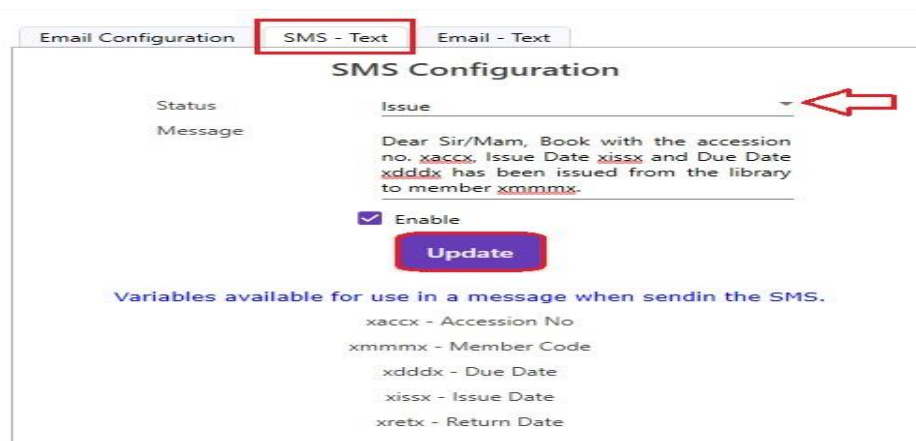
Password \*\*\*\*

Enable SSL

Save

If user wants to send SMSs for circulation transactions such as issue, return, reminder and overdue charges then he/she needs set the template and tick the “Enable” checkbox as shown in image below. This will send SMS to the member of the library.

Note: SMS Server should be running to send SMSs.



The screenshot shows the 'SMS Configuration' interface. At the top, there are three tabs: 'Email Configuration', 'SMS - Text' (highlighted with a red box), and 'Email - Text'. Below the tabs, the 'Status' is set to 'Issue', indicated by a red arrow. The 'Message' field contains a template: 'Dear Sir/Mam, Book with the accession no. xaccx, Issue Date xissx and Due Date xdddx has been issued from the library to member xmmmx.' Below the message, the 'Enable' checkbox is checked. A red 'Update' button is located below the checkbox. At the bottom, there is a section titled 'Variables available for use in a message when sendin the SMS.' with a list of variables: xaccx - Accession No, xmmmx - Member Code, xdddx - Due Date, xissx - Issue Date, and xretx - Return Date.

### System Settings → Image Upload:



The screenshot shows the 'Image Setup' interface. The 'Image Name' field is set to 'Letter\_Header', indicated by a red arrow. The 'Image Description' is 'Logo Image for Letter Heads (666 x 135)'. Below this is an 'Image Preview' section showing a logo for 'Home Institute Central Library'. At the bottom, there are two buttons: 'Select Image' and 'Upload Image', both indicated by red arrows.

First select image name -> Select Image -> Upload Image.

### System Settings → Letter Layout:





The screenshot shows the 'Letter Format' interface. The 'Letter Name' is 'Letter for Approval', indicated by a red arrow. The 'Subject' is 'Subject : Approval letter'. The 'Letter Format' field contains a template: 'Dear Sir/Madam  
I am sending herewith a list of approved items which have been suggested by you or member of your department for including in the library  
Yours faithfully,  
(Librarian)'. At the bottom, there is a 'Save' button, indicated by a red arrow.

You can select the Letter name from the dropdown and edit the text as required and save it.


### System Settings → Label Setting:

**Label Setting**


Label Name Barcode  

All Units should be in Inch only

Page Height	11.69
Page Width	8.26
Top Margin	0.59
Bottom Margin	0.713
Right Margin	0.197
Left Margin	0.197
No Of Columns	4
Column Space	0.19
No Of Rows	21
Row Space	0

 **Add** **Modify**



**Save** **Delete**





Add->Select Label Name->Define the stationary measurement->Save.

### System Settings → Letter Number Setting:

**Auto Letter Number Generation**

Name	Prefix	Status
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Acquisition Forward to Account Reference	ACQ/ACC/YY	Active  
<input type="checkbox"/> Acquisition Invoice Reference	ACQ/INV/YY	Active
<input type="checkbox"/> Acquisition Order	ACQ/ORD/YY	InActive
<input type="checkbox"/> Acquisition Payment Reference	ACQ/PAY/YY	InActive
<input type="checkbox"/> Acquisition Purchase Order	ACQ/PO/YY	InActive
<input type="checkbox"/> Acquisition Reminder	ACQ/REM/YY	InActive
<input type="checkbox"/> Serial Forward to Account	SR/FWD/ACC/YY	InActive
<input type="checkbox"/> Serial Forward to Account Reference	SR/ACC/YY	InActive
<input type="checkbox"/> Serial Forward to Vendor	SR/SUPP/YY	InActive
<input type="checkbox"/> Serial InvoiceProcessing	SR/INV/YY	InActive
<input type="checkbox"/> Serial Order	SR/ORD/YY	InActive
<input type="checkbox"/> Serial PrintOrder	SR/PO	InActive

  **Save**


Select the name->Edit Prefix->Change status->Save

## System Settings → Collection Type:

**Collection Type**

Code CH      Collection Type Children collection  
Prefix C      Total Length for Accession No 0

Code	Collection Type	Prefix	Total Length
GN	General	G	0
RR	Reference	R	0
SP	Special Collection	P	0
TT	Text Books	T	0

 **Add** **Save** **Delete**

First click on Add button -> Assign code -> Mention Collection Type -> Prefix -> Total Length for Accession No and click on "Save".

## System Settings → Library Information:

Here, you have the provision to furnish the details of your Library, which once saved (while initial setup) will not allow editing later. Also, you have to fill about the library person, the staff who is working on the modules and the details of the technical person, which can be updated as and when required.

**Library Information**

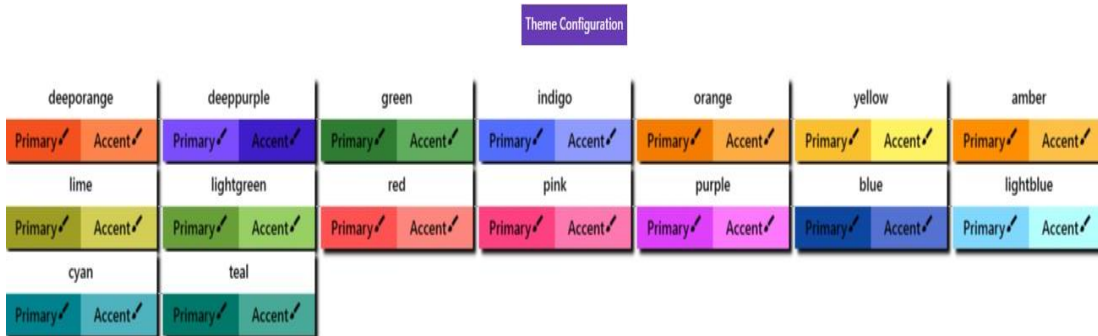
Library Name Central Library  
University Name Home University  
Librarian Name Mr Librarian  
Address 1 Infocity  
Address 2 \_\_\_\_\_  
City Gandhinaagar      Pin 123456  
Phone 1234567      Fax \_\_\_\_\_  
Email library@example.com

Technical Person Details	Library Person Details
Name <u>Mr Technical</u>	Name <u>Mr Librarian</u>
Division <u>Technical Division</u>	Division <u>Library Division</u>
Contact No <u>1234567890</u>	Contact No <u>123456789</u>
Email <u>tech@example.com</u>	Email <u>library@example.com</u>

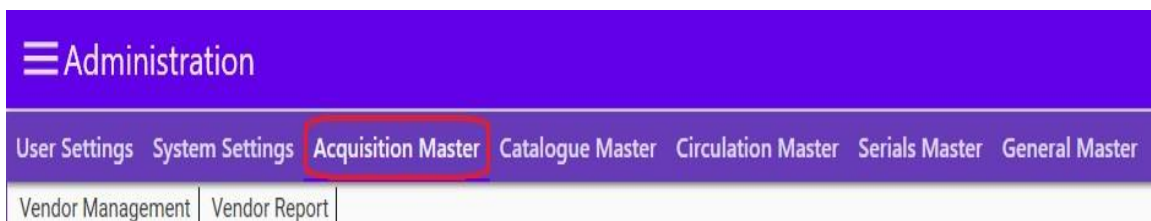
**Save**      **Edit**

## System Settings → Theme Configuration:

- There is provision to change the colour theme, Header font size, Sub Header font size and Language of the modules and sub modules. User can set their own colour theme, language etc for his/her own profile.



## Acquisition Master:



## Acquisition Master → Vendor Management:

### Vendor Management

Inactive  
 Active

Vendor Name:  \*  
 Vendor Code:  \*  
 Specialization:   
 Vendor Status:  \*  
 Address:   
 City:  \*    Pin:  \*  
 State:     Country:

Contact Details
Remarks

Contact Person:   
 Designation:   
 Email:  \*    Fax:   
 Phone:  \*    Mobile:

Add
Delete
Browse
Save

Click on Add button → Status as Active → Vendor name → Specialization → Vendor Status from dropdown → Address → City → Pin Code → State → Country → Contact Details → Save.

### Edit Vendor Details or Delete Records:

Click on Browse button → Double click on Vendor → Modify/Delete Record → Save.

## Vendor Management → Vendor Report.

### Vendor Report

Vendor Code   
  Vendor Name   
  Address   
  Contact Person   
  Email/Phone No   
  Specialization   
  Active/Inactive   
  Status   
  Remark

Select Option:

of 1
Find | Next

#### Vendors Report

Report by All Vendors

Code	Vendor Name	Address	Contact Person	Phone/Email	Specialization	Act./Inact.	Status
BOO001	Book Publishing House	Navrangpura, Ahmedabad-123456, Gujarat	Mr Contact Person	1234567 sales@example.com	General	Active	Publisher

Printed On :12/06/2020  
Report generated by-SOUL 3.0
1/1

Vendor Report → Tick the appropriate box → Select option from dropdown → Search.



## Administration → Catalogue Master:



SOUL uses the MARC format. Catalogue Administration needs knowledge of MARC standard and a bit of understanding how records are identified when they are searched for any purpose. Please refer to Appendix on MARC for understanding its mechanism.

Please DO NOT make any changes in the templates or values against any field, unless you are confident of the changes you are making. Please ensure you are familiar with the values against each tag in these templates.

### Catalogue Master → Leader:

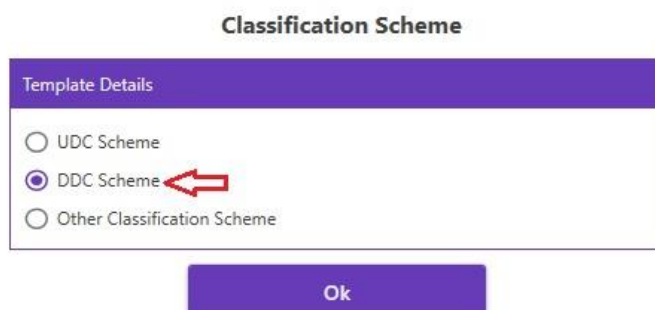
MARC records can be distinguished for various types of material by the specific codes used in Leader/06 (Type of Record). The leader of a MARC record identifies number of bibliographic record types.

### Catalogue Master → Fixed Field:

A MARC record has one Fixed Field composed of the 008 field and Leader information. Mnemonic labels identify elements that contain coded information describing the item and the record itself. We can create standard format for Fixed Field for Books /Theses, Serials and Authority. At the time of data, if we need to change any of the elements of this template, you can do so by choosing 'Modify' option.

### Catalogue Master → Classification Scheme:

You can set default Classification Scheme for your library records using this option.





## Catalogue Master → Data Entry Template:

**Data Entry Template**

Choose Data Entry Template

Choose Template Type: Bibliographic Template    Select Template Option: New Template

Select Template:    Template Name: Book template    Remark: Bibliographic record

Select Marc Tag: 245 Title Statement (NR)

Select Subfield

Select	Tag	Subfield	Description
<input type="checkbox"/>	245	6	Linkage (NR)
<input type="checkbox"/>	245	8	Field link and sequence number (R)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	245	a	Title (NR)
<input type="checkbox"/>	245	b	Remainder of title (NR)

Tags in Template

TagSave	SubfieldSave	DescriptionSave
082	a	Classification number (R)
100	a	Personal name (NR)
245	a	Title (NR)

To create new template, use the following steps;

- First “Choose template type” you want to create (i.e. Bibliographic or Authority);
- Then select “Template Option” Which enables you to choose any of the four options, i.e. New Template, Template Based on Existing, Edit Template and Delete Template;
- In case of “New Template” enter template name, or else choose existing template you want to edit/delete or create a copy;
- Now choose corresponding MARC tag (you can search by tag/description of tag) and press OK button, on left hand side you will have selection options for “Subfields” in your chosen tag, select/deselect the subfields as per your requirement, and then click add to template;
- Similarly do this operation for all the tags and corresponding subfields to create your own template.

List of available templates can be seen by pressing “List Template” button.

## Catalogue Master → Report Template:

**Report Template**

Choose Template Option	Template Details	Report Size
<input checked="" type="radio"/> New Report Template <input type="radio"/> Edit View Report Template <input type="radio"/> Delete Report Template	Select Template: _____ Report Template Name: Report Template Remark: Accession Report	Height (Inch): _____ Width (Inch): _____

Call Number  
 Class No  
 Collection Type  
 Date of Acquisition  
 Department  
 Edition  
 Invoice Date  
 Invoice No  
 ISBN  
 Issue No/Volume No  
 Keyword  
 Location  
 No. Of Copies  
 Note(s)  
 Physical Description  
 Price  
 Publisher  
 RecID

1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Accession No	Title	Author	Call Number	Publisher		

- Choose “New Template”, “Edit/View Template” or “Delete Template” → Enter template name and remark fields and select the report height and width → Select the fields which you want to display from the left side list box and it will show in the report layout area → Resize/reposition the selected fields → Page size in inches → Save.

## Catalogue Master → Global Search and Replace:

**Global Search & Replace**

<b>Tag and Subfield</b>	Select Tag: 100 Main Entry - Personal Name (NR)	← Word like	Gandhi, M.	20		↑	<b>Search</b>
	Select Subfield: a Personal name (NR)	← Replace With	Gandhi, M. K.				<b>Replace All</b>

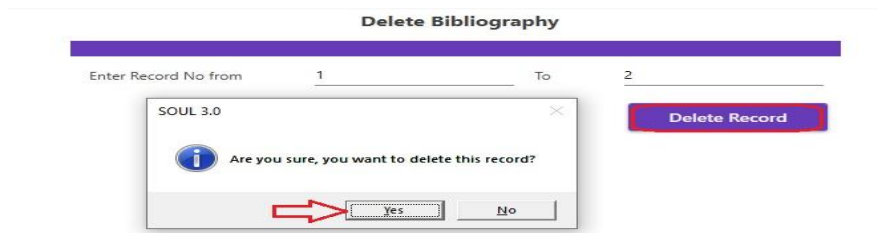
\* This Operation is Case-Sensitive

SrNo	Select	Title	Author	Call No	Location	Accession No	Status
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	मेरे सपनों का भारत	Gandhi, M.,	/		00001	Available

- First select tag, the field name followed by subfield from the dropdown menu. You have an option to search Tag/Subfield by Tag or words in Description of Tag in the drop-down.
- Then go for search, select individual records in which replacement is required & then click on “Replace All”.

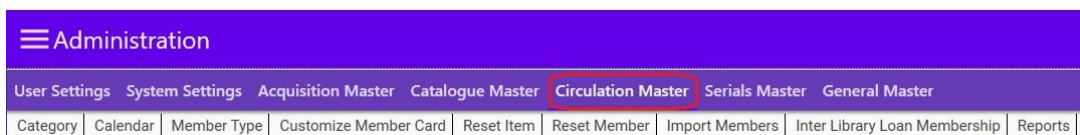
## Delete Bibliography

This option can be used when you are sure that certain records need deletion rather than corrections.

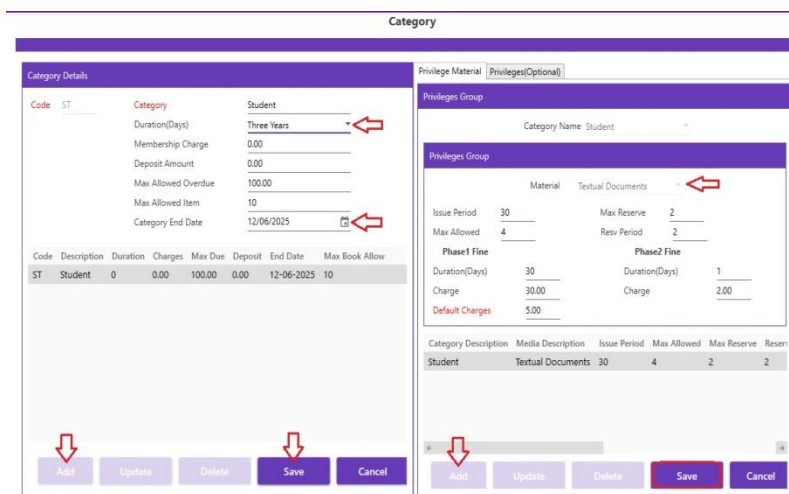


Enter Record number from and To → Delete Record.

## Administration → Circulation Master:



## Circulation Master → Category:



First add code -> category name-> select duration from dropdown menu -> add membership charges, deposit amount, maximum allowed overdue charges, maximum allowed items and category end date and save the category details.

### To define the privilege based on material:

- Add button and select "Privilege Material" from top -> select the type of material from dropdown menu -> add Issue period, maximum number of allowed items, maximum number of reserve items, reserve period, phase 1 fine, number of days and fine amount, phase 2 fine, number of days and fine amount and default charges -> Save.

**To define the privilege based on collection type:**

The screenshot shows the 'Category' interface with two main sections: 'Category Details' and 'Privilege Material Privileges(Optional)'. The 'Privileges(Optional)' tab is selected. In this section, 'Category Name' is set to 'Student' and 'Collection Type' is 'Reference'. There are checkboxes for 'Overnight Issue' and 'On Premises Issue', both of which are checked. The 'Max Item Allow Reserve' is set to 2, and the 'End time for on Premises Issue' is set to 16:00. Below these fields is a table with the following data:

Collection Type	Category Name	Over-night issue	On-premises issue allow	Max Reserve
Reference	Student	Y	Y	2

At the bottom of the interface, there are buttons for 'Add', 'Update', 'Delete', 'Save', and 'Cancel'. The 'Save' button is highlighted with a red box.

First select "Privileges (Optional)" tab from top -> select category name and collection type from dropdown menu. Select (checkbox) "Overnight Issue" and "On Premises Issue" and add maximum number of items allowed to reserve and also define the end time for on premises issue -> save. You can edit the aforesaid information through Update button.

**Circulation Master → Calendar:**

The screenshot shows the 'Calendar' interface with two main sections: 'Week off Entry' and 'Holiday Details'. In the 'Week off Entry' section, the 'Week off Day' is set to 'Sunday'. There are 'Save' and 'Update' buttons. The 'Update' button is highlighted with a red box. In the 'Holiday Details' section, there is a table with the following data:

Date	Occasion
15/08/2020	Independence Day of India

At the bottom of the interface, there are buttons for 'Add', 'Delete', 'Save', and 'Cancel'. The 'Save' button is highlighted with a red box.

First click on Update button and select weekly-off day from the dropdown menu. Click on Add button to define holiday date, occasion name and Save it.

## Circulation Master → Member Type:

**Member Type**

**Member Details**

Member Type	GENERAL	Maximum Books	10
Maximum Amount	10000.00	End Date	12/06/2020

Member Type	Maximum Amount	Maximum Books	End Date
GENERAL	10000.00	10	12-06-2020

Add
Update
Delete
Save
Cancel

Member Type → Click on Add button → Add Member Type → Maximum Books → Maximum Amount → End Date → Save.

## Circulation Master → Customize Member Card:

**Customize Member Card**

**Choose Option**

New Template

Edit Template

Delete

**Template Details**

Select Template: Student Id card

Template Name: Student Id card

Remark:

**Report Size**

Height (Inch): 2.0

Width (Inch): 3.8

Show Instruction

Barcode

Course Designation

Department Name

Institute Address

Institute Logo

Institute Name

Instruction

Librarian Sign

Member Address

Member Code

MemberDateOfBirth

Member ID

Member Name

Member Sign

Member Photo

Valid From

Valid Up To

### To create template for membership card

- Choose “New Template”, “Edit/View Template” or “Delete Template” from template administration option.
- Enter template name and remark fields and mention the report height and width.
- Then select the fields which you want to display on member card from the left side list box and arrange it in the report layout area. You can resize/reposition the selected fields as per your requirement.
- If you want to print the instruction on member card, click on “Add Instructions” and write it in the given panel.

You can check the preview of the template using member card option in circulation module.

## Circulation Master → Reset Item:

**Reset Item**

**Book Detail**

Accession No 00002

Accession No	Book Status	Title	Author	Call No	Material	Iss
00002	Issued	Artificial intelligence	Rich, Elaine, ,		Textual Documents	N

←

**Remove Item**   **Remove All Items**   **Update Item Status**

Please note : It will only reset the item which book status either is "issue" or "on hold".

Reset Item → Accession Number → Remove Item/Remove All Items/Update Item Status.

## Circulation Master → Reset Member:

**Reset Member**

Member Code / ID ST03MS200001

**Member Detail**


Member Name Library User 4

Member Code ST03MS200001

Department Computer Science

Category Student

Current Date 0



**Reset Member**

Reset Member → Member Code/ID → Reset Member.

## Circulation Master → Import Member:

Category	CourseDesignation	Institute	Department	MemberFirstName	MemberLastName	PermanentAddress	PermanentCity	PermanentPinC
Student	MLIS	Home Institute	Library Science	Library	User 2	Navrangpura	Ahmedabad	380009
Student	BSc	Home Institute	Computer Science	Library	User 3	Navrangpura	Ahmedabad	380009
Student	MSc	Home Institute	Computer Science	Library	User 4	Navrangpura	Ahmedabad	380009

Category	MappingValue
Student	ST(Student)

Institute	MappingValue
Home Institute	01(Home Institute)

Department	MappingValue
Computer Science	03(Computer Science)
Library Science	02(Library Science)

Branch	MappingValue
BLIS	BL(BLIS)
BSc	BS(BSc)
MLIS	ML(MLIS)
MSc	MS(MSc)

### Steps to Import Member Data.

Create Excel Sheet based on the downloaded sample file by clicking download button beside “Browse Folder” button in top right corner. Copy and paste the data in the format available in Microsoft Excel file. Blank fields should be mentioned as 0. Keep Member Code field blank, as the software will generate member code automatically and the field will be available with the generated member code in MS Excel file.

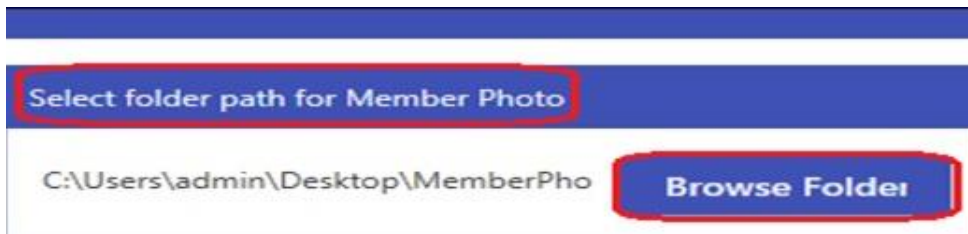
### Select Files to Import:

- Select the excel file to import member data in SOUL 3.0 by clicking Browse
- After selection of file, you will be able to see member data in grid below;

**Import Member**

Category	CourseDesignation	Institute	Department	MemberFirstName	MemberLastName	PermanentAddress	PermanentCity	PermanentPinC
Student	BLIS	Home Institute	Library Science	Library	User 1	Navrangpura	Ahmedabad	380009
Student	MLIS	Home Institute	Library Science	Library	User 2	Navrangpura	Ahmedabad	380009
Student	BSc	Home Institute	Computer Science	Library	User 3	Navrangpura	Ahmedabad	380009
Student	MSc	Home Institute	Computer Science	Library	User 4	Navrangpura	Ahmedabad	380009

**Member Photo:** Select the location of folder which contains member photo (file name of photo must be Member ID). Now select folder path for member photos.



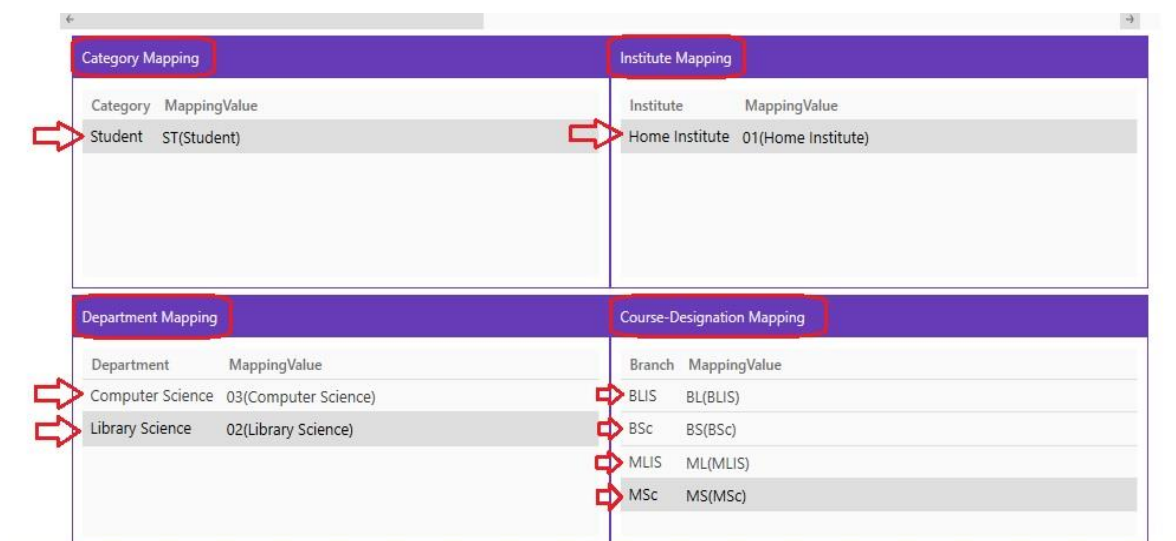
**Mapping:**

**Category Mapping:** Map category field with the category available in database from the drop-down list, which is reflected from Circulation Master (Category);

**Institute Mapping:** Map institute field with the institutes available in database from the drop-down list, which is reflected from General Master (Institute Details);

**Department Mapping:** Map department field with the department available in database from the drop-down list, which is reflected from General Master (Institute Details);

**Course/Designation Mapping:** Map branch field with the Course & Designation field available in database from the drop-down list, which is reflected from General Master (Institute Details);



After mapping the values of Category, Institutes, Department and Course & Designation, click 'Import to SOUL 3.0', the message will appear 'Members are imported successfully'. After successfully importing the members, you can see Member Listing report in Circulation reports.







**Member Listing**

Selection Option: All ←

No Due Members

Entry Date Between: 01/06/2020 And 03/07/2020

**Display**

Member Code	Category	Member Photo	Member Name	D.O.B	Academic Details	Member ID	Permanent Address	Temporary /
ST02BL200001	Student		User 1 Library	10/03/1999	BLIS Library Science Home Institute	BL-021	Navrangpura, Ahmedabad-380009 Phone : 1234567890	Navrangpura, Ahmedabad, 31234567890
ST02ML200001	Student		User 2 Library	10/03/1999	MLIS Library Science Home Institute		Navrangpura, Ahmedabad-380009 Phone : 1234567890	Navrangpura, Ahmedabad, 31234567890
ST03BS200001	Student		User 3 Library	11/03/1999	BSc Computer Science Home Institute	BL-023	Navrangpura, Ahmedabad-380009 Phone : 1234567890	Navrangpura, Ahmedabad, 31234567890
ST03MS200001	Student		User 4 Library	12/03/1999	MSc Computer Science Home Institute	BL-024	Navrangpura, Ahmedabad-380009 Phone : 1234567890	Navrangpura, Ahmedabad, 31234567890

**Send Mail**

## Circulation Master → Inter Library Loan:

## Inter Library Loan → Institutional Membership:

**Inter Library Loan Membership**

ILL Details							Privileges Details				
Library	Institutional	Code	ILINS2001				Library Name	Institute Library			
Name	Institute Library						Type of Material	Textual Documents			
Address	Navrangpura						Issue Period (Days)	30			
City	Ahemdabad	Pin	123456				Max Allowed (Nos)	5			
Phone	1234567	Fax					Fine Charges (Rs.)	10			
Librarian	Institutional Librarian	Reference No					Librarian Name	Media Description	Max Allowed	Fine Charges	Issue Period
Contact	1234567890						Institute Library	Textual Documents	5	10.00	30
Effective From	12/06/2020	To	12/06/2025								
Email	institute@example.com										
Remarks											

Add Update Delete Save Cancel

To create new Institutional Member -> select 'Add' -> fill-up requisite details of the institute and 'Save'. The new Institute will be created. To assign 'Privileges', highlight the institute in the left box and click 'Add' button appearing in the right box. Feed details like Type of Material, Maximum Loan Period, Maximum number of Items allowed and overdue charges – 'Save' details.

Updated information will appear in the row against the institution.

To Update details of any existing institutional member, in the left box highlight the row in which institution's name is appearing, click 'Update' – correct details as needed – and click on 'Save'. To Update privileges, follow the same process, but click 'Update' in the left box and correct the details – do not forget to 'Save' it.

## Inter Library Loan → Departmental Library:

**Inter Library Loan Membership**

**ILL Details**

Library: Departmental Code: DLLIB2002  
 Name: Library Science Department  
 Address: Infocity  
 City: Gandhinagar Pin: 123456  
 Phone: 1234567 Fax:   
 Librarian: Departmental Librarian Reference No:   
 Contact: 1234567890  
 Effective From: 12/06/2020 To: 12/06/2025  
 Email: dept@example.com  
 Remarks:

Code	Name	Address	City	PIN	Phone	Fax	Librarian
DLLIB2002	Library Science Department	Infocity	Gandhinagar	123456	1234567		Depart
ILINS2001	Institute Library	Navrangpura	Ahmedabad	123456	1234567		Institut

**Privileges Details**

Library Name: Library Science Department  
 Type of Material: Textual Documents  
 Issue Period (Days): 30  
 Max Allowed (Nos): 10  
 Fine Charges (Rs.): 5

Librarian Name	Media Description	Max Allowed	Fine Charges	Issue Period
Library Science Department	Textual Documents	10	5.00	30

Buttons: Add, Update, Delete, Save, Cancel

Inter Library Loan → Click on Add button → Select Library: Departmental → Feed appropriate details → Save.

To add privileges: Select the department → Click on Add button to right side → Select Library name from dropdown → Type of Material → Assign Issue Period → Maximum allowed (Nos) → Fine Charges → Save.

## Circulation Master → Reports:

**Administration**

User Settings General Master System Settings Acquisition Master Catalogue Master **Circulation Master** Serials Master

Category Calendar Member Type Customize Member Card Reset Item Reset Member Import Members Inter Library Loan Membership **Reports**

Transactions ->

- Institute List
- Category Listing

We can generate two reports from Circulation Masters, which can be saved in PDF, Word or Excel format and also can send mail;

1) Institute List (with its Departments and Branches)

**Institute List**

Select Option: Institute Select: Home Institute Display

1 of 1 100% Find Next

**Institute / Department / Branch List**

Report by Institute-Home Institute

Institute Code	Institute Name
01	Home Institute Infocity, Gandhinagar - 123456 Phone : 1234567 Fax : Email : home@example.com
<b>Department :</b> 02 Library Science	
Branch :	BL BLIS ML MLIS
<b>Department :</b> 03 Computer Science	
Branch :	BS BSc MS MSc

## 2] Membership Categories List (Category details)

**Category Listing**

All     By Category    **Display**

Category Code	Category Name	Category Duration	Charges	Max Due	Deposit
☐ SF	Staff	360	0.00	100.00	0.00
↑	Media Code    Media Name	Fine Charges	Issue Period	Max Allowed	Res Period
	010    Textual Documents	5.00	30	10	2
☐ ST	Student	0	0.00	100.00	0.00
↑	Media Code    Media Name	Fine Charges	Issue Period	Max Allowed	Res Period
	010    Textual Documents	5.00	30	4	2

Printed On : 12/06/2020 1

## Administration → Serials Master.

Administration						
User Settings	General Master	System Settings	Acquisition Master	Catalogue Master	Circulation Master	<b>Serials Master</b>
Vendor Management (SM)	Frequency Master	Delivery Mode	Binding Type	Edition Master	Reports	

## Serials Master → Vendor Management:

**Vendor Management**

Category: Publisher     Inactive     Active

Name: Book Publisher    Code: BOO001

Address: Navrangpura

---

City: Ahmedabad    Pin: 123456

State: Gujarat    Country: India

---

Contact Person: Mr. Publisher

Email: publisher@example.cor    Phone: 1234567

Mobile: 1234567890    Fax: \_\_\_\_\_

Remarks: \_\_\_\_\_

Vendor Management → Add → Select Category → Name → Address → City → Pin → State → Country → Contact Person → Email → Phone → Mobile → Fax → Remarks → Save.

## Serials Master → Frequency Master:

**Frequency Master**

Code  Description  No Of Issue  Period  Months

Name	Code	Days	Months	Year	Days Month Year	Issues Year
Three times a week	i	2	0	0	D	156
Three times a month	j	10	0	0	D	36
Continuously Updated	k	0	0	0	0	0
<b>Monthly</b>	<b>m</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>12</b>
Fortnightly	n	15	0	0	D	26
Quarterly	q	0	3	0	M	4
Semimonthly	s	15	0	0	M	24
Three times a year	t	0	4	0	M	3

Frequency Master → Add → Code → Description → No. of Issue → Period → Months → Save.

## Serials Master → Delivery Mode:

**Delivery Mode**

Code  Description

Code	Description
A	Air Mail
C	Courier
<b>H</b>	<b>Hand Delivery</b>
L	Local
P	Parcel
R	Register
S	Sea Surface

Delivery Mode → Add → Code → Description → Save.

## Serials Master → Binding Type:

**Binding Type**

Code  Name

Binding Code	Binding
<b>CBR</b>	<b>Brown</b>
CDA	Dark
CDG	Dark Green
COT	Others
CRE	Red
CYE	Yellow
EGO	Gold
EOT	Others

Note: Please ensure following prefix while assigning code; 'T' for Type of Binding; 'C' for Colour of Binding; 'E' for Embossing Type

Binding Type → Add → Code → Name → Save.

## Serials Master → Edition Master:

**Edition Master**

Code A ..... Name Asian ←

Code	Description
A	Asian
E	Eastern Economy
I	Indian
P	Paperback

→ Add Save Delete Reset

Edition Master → Add → Code → Name → Save.

## Serials Master → Reports:

Administration

User Settings Acquisition Master System Settings Catalogue Master Circulation Master **Serials Master** General Master

Vendor Management (SM) Frequency Master Delivery Mode Binding Type Edition Master **Reports**

Transactions ->

- Vendor Report (SM)
- Frequency Report
- Delivery Report

## Reports → Vendor Report:

Vendor report can be generated by Active/Inactive/city wise/ status wise besides listing of all the vendors, these reports can also be filtered by Supplier/Publisher/Binder.

**Publisher/Supplier/Binder Report**

Parameter All Vendors ←

→ View All Filter results by  Suppliers  Publishers  Binders **Display**

1 of 1 100% Find | Next

**Vendor Management**  
Report by : All Vendors

Vendor Code	Vendor Name	Address	Contact Person	Status
BOO001	Book Publisher	Navrangpura	Mr. Publisher	Active
BOO002	Book Supplier	Navrangpura	Mr. supplier	Active

Printed On : 12/06/2020 1/1  
Report generated by-SOUL 3.0

## Reports → Frequency Report:

One can generate listing of all entered frequency either by “exact search” or “search by any word” within text, if you want listing of all the frequencies, in that case don't enter anything as search parameter, choose option as “Anywhere in Text” and press display button.

**Frequency Report**

Search Parameter \_\_\_\_\_  Exact Search  Anywhere in text **Display**

1 of 1 100% Find | Next

**Frequency Report**  
Report by : All Frequency

Code	Frequency Name	Date/Month/Year	Issues	Days	Months	Years
#	Not determined	Y	0	0	0	0
a	Annual	Y	1	0	0	1
b	Bimonthly	M	6	0	2	0
c	Semiweekly	D	104	3	0	0
d	Daily	D	366	1	0	0
e	Biweekly	D	26	14	0	0
f	Semiannual	Y	2	0	0	1
g	Biennial	Y	1	0	0	2
h	Triennial	Y	1	0	0	3
i	Three times a week	D	156	2	0	0
j	Three times a month	D	36	10	0	0
k	Continuously Updated	o	0	0	0	0
m	Monthly	M	12	0	1	0
n	Fortnightly	D	26	15	0	0
q	Quarterly	M	4	0	3	0
s	Semimonthly	M	24	15	0	0
t	Three times a year	M	3	0	4	0
U	Unknown	y	0	0	0	0
w	Weekly	D	52	7	0	0
x	Completely Irregular	o	0	0	0	0
z	Other	y	0	0	0	0

## Reports → Delivery Mode Report:

One can generate listing of all delivery modes using this report, the report parameters are same as described in “Frequency Report”.

**Delivery Mode Report**

Search Parameter \_\_\_\_\_  Exact Search  Anywhere in text **Display**

1 of 1 100% Find | Next

**DeliveryMode Report**  
Report by : All Records

Mode Code	Mode Description
A	Air Mail
C	Courier
H	Hand Delivery
L	Local
P	Parcel
R	Register
S	Sea Surface

-----XXX-----





# SOUL 3.0: Catalogue Module

**☰ Catalogue**

**Cataloguing** Import/Export User Services Reports

Title(s) In-Process Book Theses Data Operation

## Cataloguing → Book:

### Main Entry:

**Main Entry** Optional Entry

Leader  nam a22 4a 4500 **Modify** Fixed Field (006/8)  n ||lg||||Z|||| **Modify**

---

**Title Statement (245)** **Edition Statement (250)**

Title added entr

Title \$a

Remainder of Title \$b

Edition \$a

Rem.of Edition \$t.\$b

---

**Contributors**

Personal Name(100) Corporate Name(110) Meeting Name(111) Uniform Name(130)

Personal name(100/700)    Added Entry

Personal name \$a

Relator term \$e

---

**Publisher Information (260)**

Name \$b

Date \$c

---

**Physical Description (300)**

Pagination \$a

---

**Location (852)**

Range

Copy No \$t   #  #

Accession No \$p

Material

- **Main Entry**→ Leader from dropdown menu (Book) → Fixed Field from dropdown menu (Book)
- Title statement (Tag 245): Add title → Remainder of title if any → Statement of responsibility if any.
- Edition Statement (Tag 250): Add edition.
- Contributors: Personal name (Tag 100/700): Add personal name (Author's name)→ Relator term (Author). Click Added Entry for second author→ click once on plus + sign and add the second author.
- Publisher Information (Tag 260): Add name → Place → Country→Date (year of publication). Select language →Class number from dropdown menu → Add ISBN;
- Physical Description (Tag 300): Add Pagination → Illustrations → Dimension → Accompanying Material;
- Location (Tag 852): Add Accession → Material → Collection type → Class number → Coded Location→ Shelving location → Shelving location→ Department →Budget → Currency →Price→ Supplier → Invoice number → Invoice date → Date of acquisition. If the title is restricted for circulation, click the check box;
- Add Range of Accession numbers in case of multiple copies entry:

The screenshot shows a form titled "Location (852)" with a purple header. Below the header, there are several input fields and options. The "Range" option is selected with a checked checkbox. The form includes fields for "Range" (with a "to" separator), "Length", "Prefix", and "Suffix", each with a corresponding input box. A "Go" button is located at the end of the form.

You can add range of accession numbers using this option.

- Multiseries: Tick mark 'Multi Series' → Click on the button Add Series → enter Series Statement, Volume Designator and ISSN Number →click the OK button.
- To attach any document, click on "Select File", select the desired file from browser window. At the click of 'Save' in the main data entry screen, the attached file will be uploaded to the database. User have option to attach multiple files with single record.



## Optional Entry:

Catalogue -> Cataloguing Process -> Data Operation -> Book Bibliographic Details (Predefined)

Main Entry Optional Entry

Varying form of title (246)

Note/added ε      Type of title

Display text \$i

Title \$a      Remainder of title \$b

Place \$a      Name of part/sec of work \$p

Subject Added Entry (6XX)

Chronological Term(648)      Topical Term(650)      Geographic Name(651)      Faceted Topical Term(654)

Personal Name(600)      Uncontrolled Term(653)      Corporate Name(610)      Meeting Name(611)      Uniform Title(630)

Personal name      Type of personal name entr      Thesaurus       Added Entry

Personal name \$a      Dates associated with a name \$d

Relator term \$e      Fuller form of name \$q

URL(856) \$u      Access method      Relationship

Note (5XX)

General(500)      Formatted Contents(505)      Bibliographic(504)      With(501)      Citation/Ref.(510)      Language(546)      Supplement(525)

General \$a

Record ID: 3      New Edit Save First Previous Next Last

Last Acc. No.

- Varying Form of Title (Tag 246): Add title → Place → Remainder of title → Name of part/section of work;
- Subject added entry (6xx) Uncontrolled term (653): Add keywords instead of subject headings. To add multiple keywords click on + sign;
- URL (856): Enter fully qualified URL specifying the protocol (i.e. http://, https://, ftp: etc) which will enable users to directly access that resource by clicking in OPAC.

## Edit Records:

- Click Edit button → Select either Record ID, Range of Records, A particular accession number, By User Name, Range of Date Entered as well as by searching through OPAC by clicking 'Search' radio button.

## Cataloguing → Theses:

- This form is used to enter bibliographic details for Theses same like book entry shown above.

Theses x

Catalogue -> Cataloguing Process -> Data Operation -> Theses Details (Predefined)

Leader: Theses ntm a22 a 4500 **Modify** Fixed Field (006/8): Theses n |||frmmmmZ00: **Modify**

Title Statement (245)

Title added entry: Nonfillingcharacters

Title \$a \_\_\_\_\_ Number of part \$n  +  
-  
Remainder of Title \$b \_\_\_\_\_ Statement of responsibility \$c \_\_\_\_\_ Name of part \$p  +  
-

Contributors

Personal Name(100) Corporate Name(110) Uniform Name(130)

Personal name(100/700) Type of personal name entry element Type of added entry/Thesaurus  Added Entry +  
-  
Personal name \$a \_\_\_\_\_ Dates associated with a name \$d \_\_\_\_\_  
Relator term \$e  +  
- Fuller form of name \$q \_\_\_\_\_

Publisher Information (260)

Name \$b  +  
- Place \$a  +  
- Language  Class No. \$a  +  
-  
Date \$c  +  
- Country  ISBN (020) \$a  +  
-

## Cataloguing → Data Operation (Bibliographic/Authority entry based on template):

**Data Operation**

Template Based Data Entry  Authority Template Based Data Entry

Select Book

**OK** **Cancel**

After clicking “OK” button, following screen will be appeared.

Catalogue -> Cataloguing Process -> Data Operation -> Book Bibliographic Details (Template Based)

---

Leader Authority Pers   Fixed Field (006/8) Personal Nam

Country  Language  Attachment

**Title Statement (NR) (245)**

<input type="text"/>	a	Title (NR)	<input type="text"/>
<input type="text"/>	b	Remainder of title (NR)	<input type="text"/>

**Publication, Distribution, Etc. (Imprint) (NR) (260)**

<input type="text"/>	a	Place of publication, distribution, etc. (R)	<input type="text"/>
<input type="text"/>	b	Name of publisher, distributor, etc. (R)	<input type="text"/>

**Location (852)**

Range

Copy No \$t  Shelving s  Shelving c

Accession No \$p  Collect. Type  Coded Location \$f  Department  Supplier

Material  Class No. \$k  Location \$a  Budget  Invoice No.

Status  Book No. \$m  Shelving Location \$c  Currency  Invoice Dt.

Issue Restricted  Price  Date of Acq

Record ID: 7684

Bibliographic/Authority entry for the selected fields using template-based entry can be done using this option. Before that it is mandatory to create a Data Entry Template in Administration Module. (Administration > Catalogue Master > Data Entry Template).

## Import/ Export:

### Import from MARC:

Catalogue -> Data Export/Import -> MARC Data to SOUL(Import)

Processing Record

Import Bibliographic Records  Import Authority Records

Consider Tag 852(Local Fields)

Select Marc File to import data: C:\Users\admin\Desktop\Marc-20. **Browse** From Clipboard

Record Under Process: 1

Total Record Added: 1

1 Record imported with Record ID 9

**Import** Cancel

First of all you have to download marc record from various sites like, <http://catalog.loc.gov/>, <http://indcat.inflibnet.ac.in/>

- Click on Import/ Export → Import from MARC → Select MARC file to import data from where you have saved earlier → Click on Import → Add Accession no. to Imported data → Enter title which is imported by you → click on search → select record → fill (852 MARC tag) Location related information and click on save.

### Export to MARC:

Catalogue -> Data Export/Import -> SOUL to MARC Data(Export)

Consider Centralize Library Export Record

Range of Records

Consider tag 852

Location of MARC File: C:\Users\admin\Desktop\doc1 **Browse**

Starting Record No.: 1

Ending Record No.: 150

Record Under Process: .....

Total Record: .....


**Export** Cancel

- To export Data from SOUL to MARC format follow the steps:  
Click on Export to marc → Enter the location of the marc file in which you want to export data → Enter starting record and ending record → click on export.

## CCF to MARC:

---

**Catalogue -> Data Import/Export -> CCF to MARC**

  Consider Tag852 (Local Fields)

Select ISO File to Import data

Processing Record

Total No. of record Added in Database

---

- If you have a data in iso format or CCF format then you can convert in to SOUL 3.0 through **CCF to MARC**  
Click on CCF to MARC → Select ISO file → click on import → Add Accession no. to Imported Data.

## MARCXML to SOUL:

---

**IMPORT FROM MARCXML to SOUL**

  Consider Tag852 (Local Fields)

Select XML File

Processing Record

Total record imported

- You can also import data from XML format.  
Click on Import from MARCXML to SOUL → Select XML file → click on Import XML → Add Accession no to imported data.

## Add Accession Number to the Imported Record:

**Catalogue -> Data Import/Export -> Add Accession No. to Imported Data (Set Location)**

Search By Title  **Search**

RecID	Title	Author	Edition	ClassNo
4	Dictionary of Library Science	KAWATRA, P S	Edition not present	2:(P111:4k) \
5	Dictionary of Library Science	KAWATRA, P S	Edition not present	2:(P111:4k) \
6	Dictionary of Library Science	KAWATRA, P S	Edition not present	2:(P111:4k) \
7	Dictionary of Library Science	KAWATRA, P S	Edition not present	2:(P111:4k) \

**Location(852)**

Range

Copy No \$t 1      Shelving schem:      Shelving order

Accession No \$p 00005      Collect. Type \$b Reference      \*Coded Location \$f Main Library      \*Department Library Science      \*Supplier

Material Textual Docume      \*Class No. \$k 020.3      Location \$a First Floor      Budget Books      \*Invoice No.

Status Available      \*Book No. \$m KAW      Shelving Location \$c Rac18      Currency India Rupees      \*Invoice Dt.

Issue Restricted       Price      Date of Acq

**Save**

- Click on the search button → Select title to be accessioned from imported titles which is to be accessioned → enter the other details (location 852) as done in predefined data sheet.

## User Services: Current Awareness / Bibliographic Service:

**Current Awareness Services**

Search Parameter

Filter Parameter

Subject        From Date 07-07-2020 To 07-07-2020

Author       Language

**Show Report**

Select Report Template  →

1 of 1      100%      Find | Next

**Current Awareness Services**

Accession No	Title	Author	ISBN
00003	Colon classification /	Ranganathan, S. R.	

Total No. Of Items 1

Printed On : 07/07/2020

**Bibliographic Service**

Search Parameter

Filter Parameter

Subject:        Date From:  To:

Author:       Language:

**Show Report**

Select report template:  ←

---

**Bibliographic Services**

AccessionNo	Title	Author	Publisher
00003	Colon classification /	Ranganathan, S. New DelhiEss R.	Ess Publication2017
Total No. Of Items			1

Printed On : 07/07/2020

- You can provide user services like CAS, SDI and Bibliographic services through sub module of catalogue module Click on User services → Current Awareness services → enter subject in which you want to provide CAS → Author → Language → Report Template → Show → Save into PDF/Excel or Mail it to concerned user through send mail button.
- You can provide Bibliographic services same as CAS.

### Reports:

Definitions of these reports are set in Administration->Catalogue Master->Report Templates.

### Basic:

**Basic Report**

Search Parameter

Filter Parameter

Select Report:        Date From:  To:

By Record ID Between:        Type of Material:

Record No From:  To:        Tick To Print Accession Register:

**Select Template**     

**Search**

---

**Library Collection having Record ID Between '1' And '4'**

AccessionNo	Title	Author	CallNumber	Publisher
00001	संकेत प्रणाली का प्रारम्भ	संघी, एम. के.		AhmedabadNavjivan Publishing House
00002	Artificial intelligence	Rich, Elaine,	001.535,KNI	New DelhiMcGraw-Hill2019
00003	Colon classification The basic classification	Ranganathan, S. R.,	025.43, RAN	New DelhiEss Ess Publications2008
00005	Dictionary of Library Science by P S Kawatra	KAWATRA, P S	020.3,KAW	New DelhiCrest Pub House2002
Total No. Of Items				1

Printed On : 30/06/2020

**Send Mail**

- Enter appropriate parameters and filters, as well as select the desired template and click on the search button to get the report.

## Advance:

**Advanced Report**

Select Tag	Select Subfield	Query	Select Operator
100 Main Entry - Personal Nam	a Personal name (NR)	Ranganathan	AND
245 Title Statement (NR)	a Title (NR)	Colon classification	

Select Report Template: Report Template

**Search**

**Advance Report**

AccessionNo	Title	Author	CallNumber	Publisher
00003	Colon classification The basic classification	Ranganathan, S. R.,	025.43, RAN	New DelhiEss Ess Publications2008
Total No. Of Items			1	
Printed On : 30/06/2020				

**Send Mail**

- Advance report allows you to use Boolean operators by selecting requisite MARC fields, and the sub-fields too. There are good numbers of filters to limit your search based on your requirements. You may also customize report template based on your requirements.

## Spine Labels/Book Card/Bar Code:

**Spine Label**

Search Parameter	Filter Parameter	Select fields to Display on Report
Select Report By Record ID Between	<input type="checkbox"/> Date Form 06/07/2020 To 06/07/2020	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Accession No
Record No From 1 To 5	<input type="checkbox"/> Material Type	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Class No
	Select Label Spine Label	<input type="checkbox"/> Call No
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Skip Label	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Book No
	<b>Search</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> Collection Type
		<input type="checkbox"/> Header

**Spine Label**

00001
891
GAN
00002
001.535
KNI
00003
025.43
RAN
00005
020.3
KAW

- Select the report criteria → Fields required → Select Label → Search.
- The sequence of the fields display is based on the field selection, i.e., if you have selected “Accession No” field first then it will display first.
- If you want to skip initial labels from printing then enter the number of labels in “Skip Label” option.



## Catalogue Card:

**Catalogue Card Report**

**Search Parameter**

Select Option: By Record ID Between

Record No From: 1 To: 3

**Filter Parameter**

Date Form: 30-06-2020 To: 30-06-2020

Note: If you select option "Accession Nos." then enter multiple accession no's using comma (,) as a separator.

3 of 3

Text Books  
025.43  
RAN Ranganathan, S. R.,  
Colon classification The basic classification - 6th ed - New  
Delhi Ess Ess Publications 2008  
00003 124p 24cm  
9788170004233: 441.00

- Select parameter from drop down → Dates between → Search.

## Accession Register:

**Accession Register**

**Search Parameter**

Select Option: By Record ID Between

Record No From: 1 To: 4

**Filter Parameter**

Date Form: 30-06-2020 To: 30-06-2020

Material Type: Textual Documents

**Field Selection**

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Accession No	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Date of Acquisition	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Invoice Date	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Title	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ISBN
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Class No	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Book No	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Invoice No	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Edition	<input type="checkbox"/> Status
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Budget	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Department	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Copy No	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Publisher	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Collection Type	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Price	<input type="checkbox"/> User Name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Call No	

- Select the fields to export, the sequence in ticking the boxes decides the placement of the field → select filter parameter either date or type of material → Export to tsv.
- After exporting the data, you may open this TSV file in Microsoft Excel and any editor and take print after adjusting fields.

-----XXX-----



## SOUL 3.0: Circulation Module



Before starting with the Membership, check whether prerequisites have been added in the Administration Module, General Master i.e. Institute Details and in Circulation Master, Category and Member Type.

### Membership → New Member:

**Academic Information**

Category: Student | Institute: Home Institute | Add Institutions | Department: Library Science | Course/Designation: BLIS

**Member Information**

Personal Information | Contact Information | Guarantor Information (Optional) | Hostel Information (Optional)

Surname: User 1 | Status: Active | Gender: Male | Member Type: GENERAL | MemberID: BL-021  
Forename: Library | Birth date: 10-03-1999 | Date of Joining: 30-06-2020 | Member Code: ST02BL200001  
C:\Users\HRDLab07\Desktop\nitesh\member photo\BL-022.png

**Payment Details**

Payment Information | Other

Deposit Amount	0.00	Receipt No	0	Receipt Date	16-06-2020
Membership Amount	0.00	Receipt No	0	Receipt Date	16-06-2020
Maximum Due Amount	0.00	Effective Date	01-07-2020	Card Exp. Date	30-06-2021

Remark

Add Member | Update | Save | Cancel

**Academic Information:** Select Category → Institute → Department → Course/Designation from the dropdown menu;

### Member Information:


- **Personal Information** → Add Surname → Forename → Birth Date → Date of Joining → Select Status → Gender → Member Type → Member ID (To keep it same as the code, click in the check box).
- **Contact Information** → Add Permanent Address → Present Address (If permanent address is same as present, click in the check box).
- **Guarantor Information** → If Library member is the guarantor, click in the check box → fill in the details.
- **Hostel Information** → Details of hostel to be filled in.
- **Add Photo** → Click on + sign/Camera → Select Device → Start Camera → Capture → Stop Camera.

### Payment Details:


- **Payment Information:** Deposit Amount ,Receipt Number, Receipt Date → Membership Amount, Receipt Number, Receipt Date → Maximum Amount due → Effective date → Card expiry date.
- **Others:** Card Issued and No Dues, Graduation Date.
- **After filling above details click on Save button** → Member code will generate.

### Membership → Copy Member:

**Copy Member**

 Enter Member Code / ID

Member Details	
Member Name	Library User 1
Member Code	ST02BL200001
Department	Library Science
Category	Student
Current Due	0



Copy Member

- Enter Member Code/ID → Copy Member.

## Membership → Search Member:

**Member Search**

Search Member

Member Search    Department  Library Science    Search

Select	Member Code	Member Name	Institute Name	Department	Category	Branch Name
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ST02BL200001	Library User 1	Home Institute	Library Science	Student	BLIS
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ST02ML200001	Library User 2	Home Institute	Library Science	Student	MLIS

Select All Show Member No Due Certificate

- Select Criteria → Select the opted criteria again → select the members by clicking in the check box → Show Member or No Due Certificate.

## Membership → Delete Members:

**Delete Member/Group**

Single Group

Member ID     ST02BL200001

**Member Details**

Member Name	Library User 1
Member Code	ST02BL200001
Department	Library Science
Category	Student
Overdue	0
Card Expiry Date	30-06-2021

Delete selected

- Single/Group → Mention member ID → Delete.

## Membership → Renew Members:

RENEW MEMBER

Single Group

Member ID: ST02BL200001 Valid Upto: 30-06-2023

Member Details

Member Name: Library User 1

Member Code: ST02BL200001

Department: Library Science

Category: Student

Overdue: 0

Card Expiry Date: 30-06-2021

Renewal

- Single/Group → Give Member ID → Valid upto Date → Renewal.

## Membership → Reports:

Circulation

Membership Transaction Inter Library Loan (ILL) Maintenance

New Member Copy Member Search Member Delete Member(s) Renew Member(s) Reports

Transactions -> No Due Certificate x

- No Due Certificate
- Membership Card
- Member Listing
- Member Barcode Listing

### No Due Certificate:

- Select Category → Institute → Department → Course & Designation → Entry From and To → Search → Click the check box to select the member → No Due Certificate.

### Membership Card:

- Filter by Library/Search by criteria → Select criteria → Select Template → Click in the check if Border or Principal's Signature required → Display.

### Member Listing:

- Select options → Click on the check box, No Due Members or Date Between → Display.

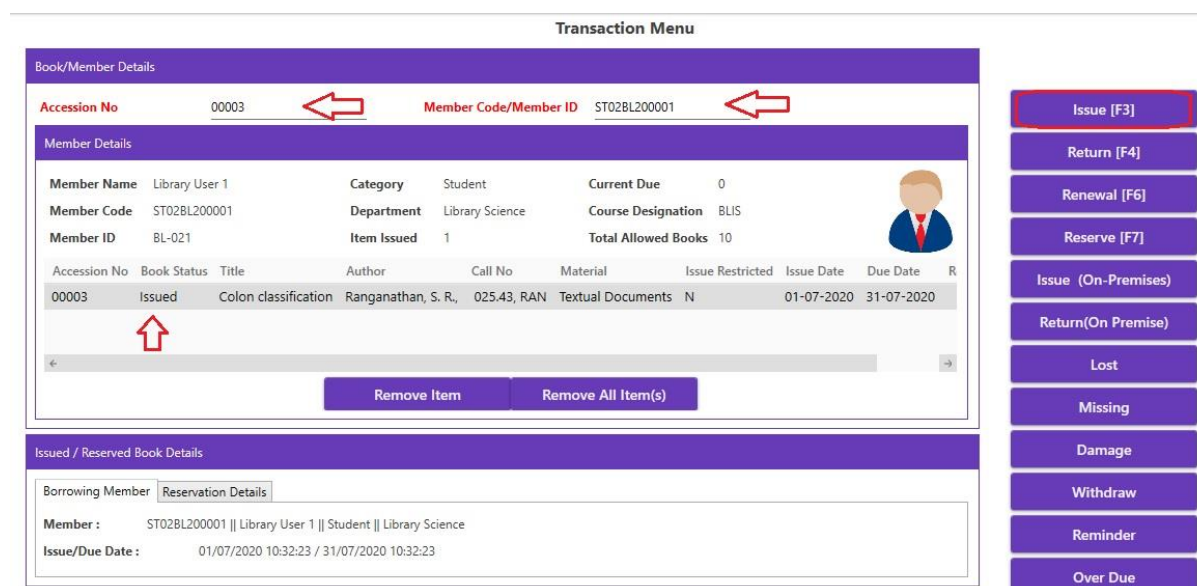
## Member Barcode Listing:

- Filter by Library → Search by → Select Template → Click on check box if Member Code, Member Barcode, Header is required and skip label → Display.

## Transaction:



## Transaction → Transaction Menu:



**Book/Member Details**

Accession No: 00003    Member Code/Member ID: ST02BL200001

**Member Details**

Member Name	Library User 1	Category	Student	Current Due	0
Member Code	ST02BL200001	Department	Library Science	Course Designation	BLIS
Member ID	BL-021	Item Issued	1	Total Allowed Books	10

Accession No	Book Status	Title	Author	Call No	Material	Issue Restricted	Issue Date	Due Date	R
00003	Issued	Colon classification	Ranganathan, S. R.,	025.43, RAN	Textual Documents	N	01-07-2020	31-07-2020	

**Issued / Reserved Book Details**

Borrowing Member: ST02BL200001 || Library User 1 || Student || Library Science

Issue/Due Date: 01/07/2020 10:32:23 / 31/07/2020 10:32:23

**Issue [F3]**  
Return [F4]  
Renewal [F6]  
Reserve [F7]  
Issue (On-Premises)  
Return(On Premise)  
Lost  
Missing  
Damage  
Withdraw  
Reminder  
Over Due

- Issue items: Enter Accession Number → Member Code or Member ID → Issue (F3).
- Return items: Enter Accession Number → Click on tab button → Return (F4).
- Renew Items: Enter Accession Number → Click on Renewal (F6).
- Reserve Items: Enter Accession Number → Click on Reserve (F7).
- Issue on Premises: Enter Accession Number → Click Issue on Premises.
- Return on Premises: Enter Accession Number → Click return on Premises.

To change the status of the items:

- Lost: Enter Accession Number → Click on Lost.
- Missing: Enter Accession Number → Click on Missing.
- Damage: Enter Accession Number → Click on Damage.
- Withdraw: Enter Accession Number → Click on Withdraw.

To generate reminder letter;

- Add accession number → Click on reminder button.
- Overdue: Click on Over Due → Enter Member Code or Member ID → Click on Search Button → Enter the Amount received → Click on Make Payment → Click on Print for receipt.

## Transaction → Search by Title:

**Search by Title**

Issued Item(s) Artificial Search

Accession No	Book Title	Member Code	Forename	Surname	Department	Branch	Issue Date	Due Date
00002	Artificial intelligence	ST02BL200001	Library	User 1	Library Science	BUS	7/1/2020 10:48:36 AM	7/31/2020 11

Issued Item(s)

Code: ST02BL200001  
Name: Library User 1  
Department: Library Science Designation: BUS  
Issue Date: 01/07/2020 10:48:36 Due Date: 31/07/2020 10:48:36  
Address: Navrangpura  
City: Ahmedabad Pin: 380009  
Phone: 1234567890

- Select either Items issues or Items issued on ILL → Enter few words of the title → Click on Search button → from the titles displayed select the title to get the borrower's details.

## Transaction → Overdue Charges:

- Overdue: Click on Over Due → Enter Member Code or Member ID → Click on Search Button → Enter the Amount received → Click on Make Payment → Click on Print for receipt.

## Transaction → Book Bank Issue:

**BOOK BANK ISSUE**

Member Code: ST02BL200001    Accession No: 00003    Due Date: 31/12/2020

Book Title: Colon classification    Book Price: 448.00

Max. Amount Allow: 10000.00    Max. Item Allowed: 10

**Member Details**

Member Code: ST02BL200001    Category: Student

Member Name: Library User 1    Member Type: GENERAL

Department: Library Science

Member Code	Accession No	Issue Date	Price	Due Date

- Issue Items: Enter Member Code or Member ID → Accession Number → Click on Issue Button.
- Return Items: Enter Accession Number → Click on Return.

## Transaction → Reminder:

**Reminder Mail**

Select Criteria: By Course-Designation (f)

Category: Student    Institute    Home Institute

Department: Library Science    Course Designation: BLIS

Select	Accession	Member Code	Member First Name	Member Last Name	Member E-mail	Issue Date	Du
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	00001	ST02BL200001	Library	User 1	user1@example.com	01-07-2020	31-
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	00002	ST02BL200001	Library	User 1	user1@example.com	01-07-2020	31-
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	00003	ST02BL200001	Library	User 1	user1@example.com	01-07-2020	31-
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	00006	ST02BL200002	Library	User 2	user2@example.com	01-07-2020	14-

- Select Criteria i.e By Due date between/By Course/Designation/By Member Code → Select Category → Institute → Department → Course/Designation → Search → Select the members displayed to send reminder mail → Click on Show or Send SMS.



## Transaction → Circulation Group:

**Group Details:** To create the group and add/delete members:

**Group Circulation**

Group Details | **Group Issue/Return**

**New Group Details**

Select Group: Group 1 ←

Member Code	Member Name	Group Name	Group Code
ST02BL200001	Library User 1	Group 1	200000

Add MemberDelete Member

Add GroupDelete Group

**Group Details**

Group Name: Group 1 Member ID/Code: ST02BL200002

Member Code	Member Name	Institute Name	Department	Category Name	Branch Name	Member S
ST02BL200002	Library User 2	Home Institute	Library Science	Student	BLIS	A

Remove SelectedClear MemberSave

- Click on Add Group button → Assign Group Name → Add Member → Enter the members names → Save.
- Delete Group/Member: Select Group name/Select individual member → Delete Group/Member.

## Group Issue/Return:

**Group Circulation**

Group Details | Group Issue/Return

Accession No: 00001

Select Group: Group 1 ↓

Due Date: 31/12/2020 📅

Accession No	Book Status	Title	Author	Material	Issue Restricted
00001	Group Issue	मेरे सपनों का भारत	गांधी, एम. के.	Textual Documents	N

Group IssueGroup ReturnRemove ItemDelete AllPrint Issue Slip

↑

- Issue Items: Give Accession Number → Select Group → Due Date → Click on Group Issue button.
- Return Items: Accession Number → Group Return.

## Transaction → Stock Verification:

**Stock Verification**

Stock Location: Rac18  
Stock Verified By: Library staff 1  
Accession No: 00003

Select file to import Accession Nos.

Accession No	Book Status	Title	Author	Book Location
00001	Available	मेरे सपनों का भारत	गंधी, एम. के.,	Rac18
00002	Available	Artificial intelligence	Rich, Elaine,	Rac18
00003	Available	Colon classification	Ranganathan, S. R.,	Rac18

Option to add accession numbers manually:

- Select Stock Location → Stock Verified by → Add accession number → Save.

Option to directly import .csv file which contains accession numbers of items:

- Select file to import Accession Numbers → Browse → Import → Click on Import accession number → Save.

Reports:

- Mismatch Asscession
- Mismatch Status
- Mismatch Location
- Available Items.

## Transaction → Member Login:

**Member Log**

Login/Logout Using Barcode Scanner

Member Code/Id: ST02BL200001

Welcome

Library (ST02BL200001)

- Add Member Code/ID → Login/Logout.
- Reports can be generated either by date, Member Code, Member ID, most frequently users, and current logged in members.

## Transaction → Book Transfer:

**Book Transfer**

Select Source Library: Central Library    Select Destination Library: Library Science Departme

Transfer Date: 01/07/2020    Accession No: 00001

Buttons: Report, Remove Item, Remove All Item, **Transfer**, Receive

- Select Source Library → Select Destination Library → Transfer Date → Add Accession Number → Click on Transfer button.

## Inter Library Loan (ILL):

**Circulation**

Membership    Transaction    **Inter Library Loan (ILL)**    Maintenance

ILL-Borrowing Book    ILL-Lending Book

## Inter Library Loan (ILL) → ILL Borrowing Book:

## ILL Borrowing Book → Request:

**ILL Request**

Request    Request To Library    Receiving Items On ILL    Arrival Reports    Issue    Reminder to Member    Return    Send to Library    List ILL

Member Code: ST03BS200001    Material: Textual Documents

Name: Library User 3

Title: Computer Networks

1st Author: Andrew S. Tanenbaum    Publication Year: 2013

2nd Author: David j. wetherall    Date Of Request: 01/07/2020

Publisher: Pearson Education India

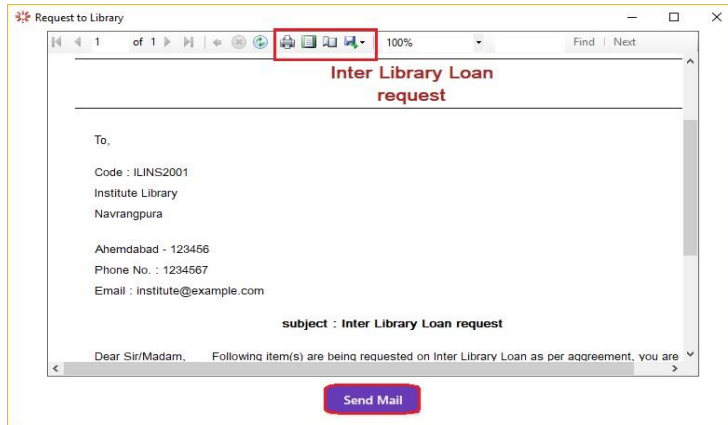
Library Name: Institute Library

Member Code	Media Description	Book Title	Author 1	Author 2	Publisher	Publish Year	Request Date	Library Name
-------------	-------------------	------------	----------	----------	-----------	--------------	--------------	--------------

Buttons: Add, Update, **Save**, Delete, Clear

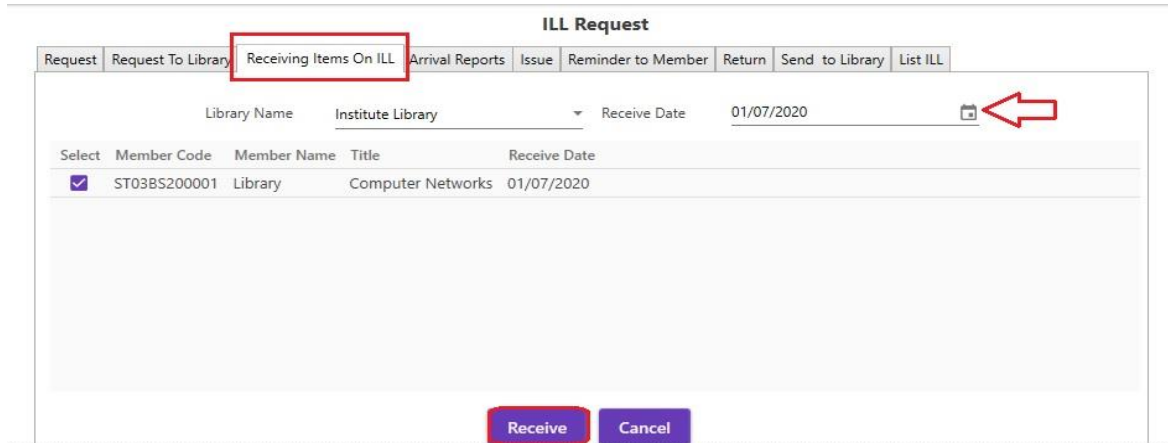
- Request → Add Member Code → Select Material → Enter Title → Author → Publisher → Publication Year → Date of Request → Select Library Name → Save.

## ILL Borrowing Book → Request to Library:



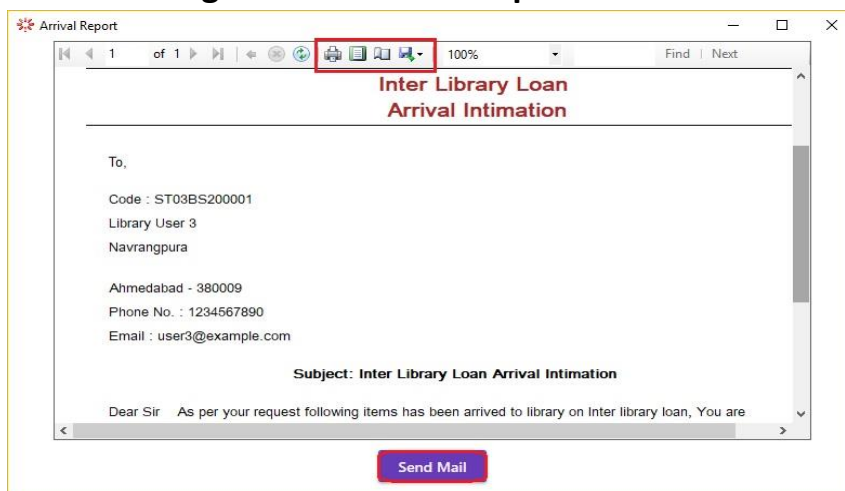
- Select Library name → Show.

## ILL Borrowing Book → Receiving Items on ILL:



- Select Library Name → Receive Date → Select the title in the check box → Receive.

## ILL Borrowing Book → Arrival Reports:



- Select the Library Name → Show.

## ILL Borrowing Book → Issue:

ILL Request

Request Request To Library Receiving Items On ILL Arrival Reports **Issue** Reminder to Member Return Send to Library List ILL

Member Code: ST03BS200001 Name: Library User 3

Select	Library Name	Title	Arrival Date	Library Code
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Institute Library	Computer Networks	01/07/2020 00:00:00	ILINS2001

**Issue** **Cancel**

- Issue → Add Member Code → Select Title in the check box → Issue.

## ILL Borrowing Book → Reminder to Member:

Arrival Report

Reminder letter

To:

Code : ST03BS200001  
Library User 3  
Navrangpura  
Ahmedabad - 380009  
Phone No. : 1234567890  
Email : user3@example.com

Subject : Reminder letter

Dear Sir/Madam,  
This has reference to our orders as per following details, for supply of books. The delivery date is already over. You are requested to supply the same within 7 days, failing which order is liable to be cancelled.

**Send Mail**

- Reminder to Member → Add Member Code → Show.

## ILL Borrowing Book → Return:

ILL Request

Request Request To Library Receiving Items On ILL Arrival Reports Issue Reminder to Member **Return** Send to Library List ILL

Member Code: ST03BS200001 Name: Library User 3

Select	Library Name	Title	Arrival Date	Issue Date	Library Code
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Institute Library	Computer Networks	01-07-2020	01-07-2020	ILINS2001

**Return** **Cancel**

- Return → Add Member Code → Select the title in the check box → Return.

## ILL Borrowing Book → Send to Library:

**ILL Request**

Request | Request To Library | Receiving Items On ILL | Arrival Reports | Issue | Reminder to Member | Return | **Send to Library** | List ILL

Library Name: Institute Library

Select	Member Code	Member Name	Title	Arrival Date	Issue Date	Receive Date	Send Date	Lib Code
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ST03BS200001	Library	Computer Networks	01-07-2020	01-07-2020	01-07-2020	01-07-2020	ILINS2001

Buttons: Send, Cancel

- Send to Library → Select Library Name → Select the Title in the check box → Send.

## ILL Borrowing Book → List ILL:

**List of Borrowed Books (Inter Library Loan)**

Member Code	Member Name	Library Code	Library Name	Book Title	Arrival Date	Issue
ST03BS200001	LibraryUser 3	ILINS2001	Institute Library	Computer Networks	01/07/2020	01/07/2020

Printed On :01/07/2020  
Report generated by:SOUL.3.0

Buttons: Send Mail

- List ILL → Issue date from → Issue date to → List Items.

## Inter Library Loan (ILL) → ILL Lending Book: ILL Lending Book → Issue:

**BOOK LENDING**

Issue | Reminder to Library | Return | Report

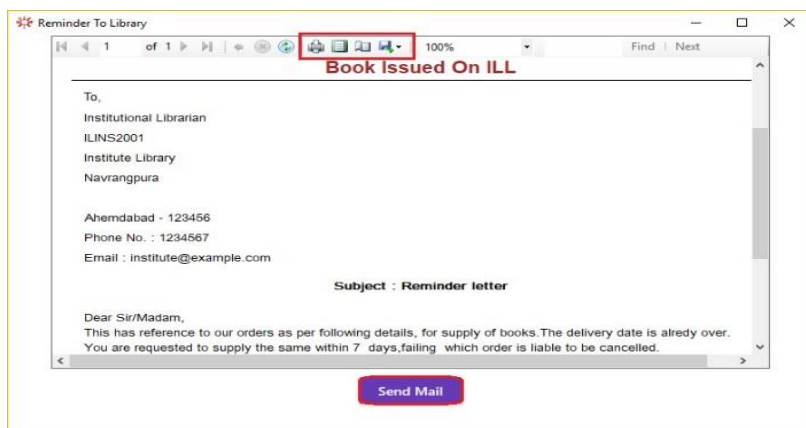
Accession No. 00003  
Book Leading Colon classification/The basic classification  
Issue Institute Library  
Reference Inter Library Loan  
Request Date 01/07/2020 Sending Date 02/07/2020

Accession No	Library Name	Request Date	Request Reference	Send Date
00003	Institute Library	01-07-2020	Inter Library Loan	02-07-2020

Buttons: Issue, Update, Save, Delete, Cancel

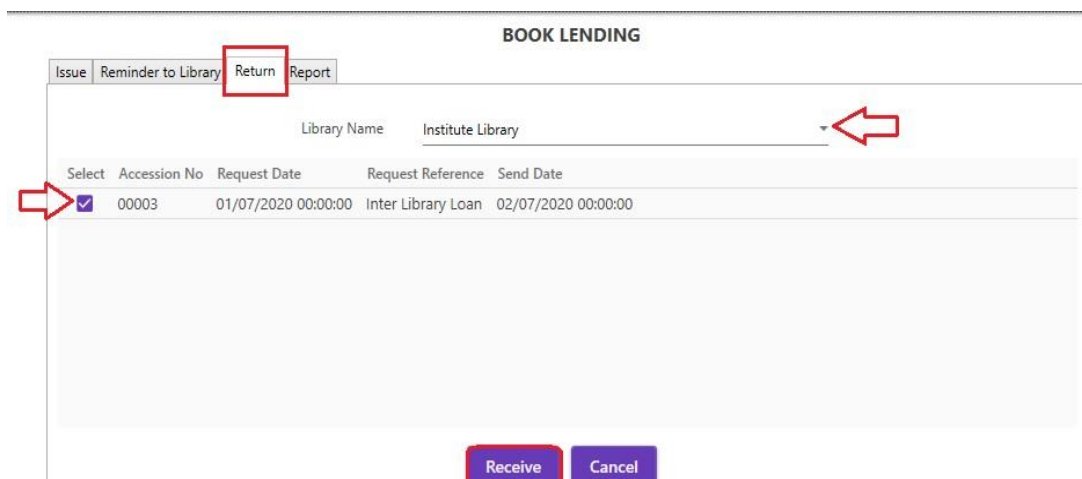
- Issue → Add Accession Number → Issue (Select the library from dropdown) → Give Reference → Request Date → Sending Date → Save.

## ILL Lending Book → Reminder to Library:



- Reminder to Library → Select Library Name → Show.

## ILL Lending Book → Return:



- Return → Select Library Name → Receive.

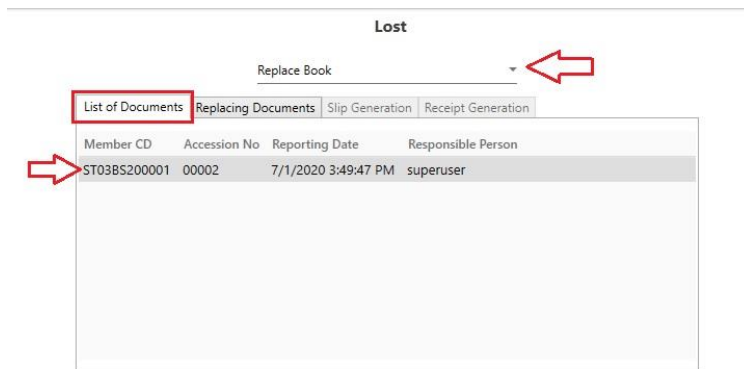
## ILL Lending Book → Report:

- Report → Request Date from → Request Date to → List ILL.

## Circulation -> Maintenance:



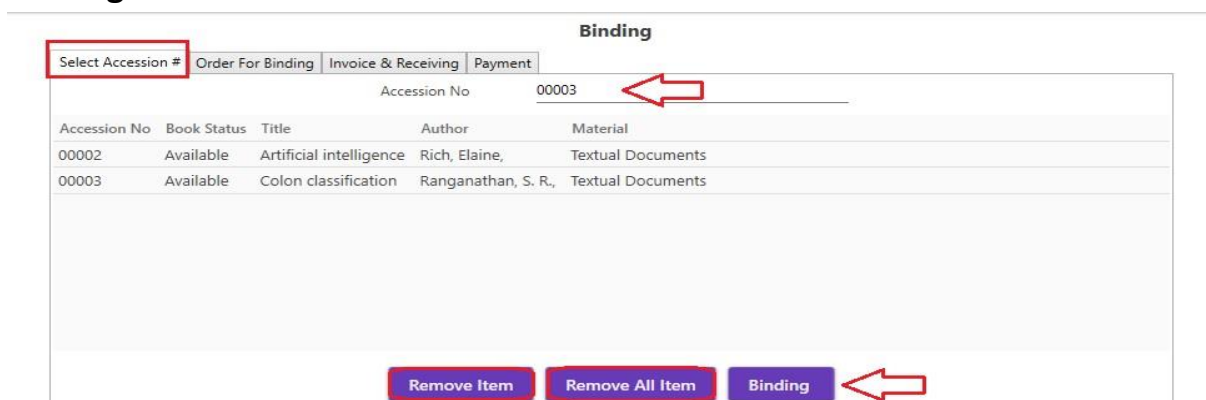
## Maintenance → Lost:



- Lost → Select from dropdown Replace/Amount Recovery:
- If Replace Book → Replacing Document → Select the Accession number to be replaced → Replace.
- If Amount Recovery → Select the title lost → Slip Generation → Slip Number → Member Id → Accession Number → Fine → Recovered → Payment.
- Receipt Generation → Payment.

## Maintenance → Binding:

### Binding → Select Accession:



- Select Accession → Add Accession numbers → Click on Binding button.



## Binding → Order for Binding:

**Binding**

Select Accession # **Order For Binding** Invoice & Receiving Payment

Order No: ORDN14 Budget Head: Books Expected Date: 07/07/2020

Binder: Binder Group Binding Type: Brown Price/DOC: 60

Select	No	Accession No	Title	Price
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	B3	00002	Artificial intelligence	0

**Save**

- Order for Binding → Assign Order Number → Select Binder → Budget Head → Binding Type → Expected Date → Mention Price per document → Select the title in the check box → Save.

## Binding → Invoice & Receiving:

**Binding**

Select Accession # **Order For Binding** **Invoice & Receiving** Payment

Order No: ORDN14 Invoice Receive Date: 07/06/2020 Discount Amount: 0

Invoice#: INV14 Forwarding Date: 07/06/2020 Overdue Amount: 0

Invoice Date: 07/06/2020 Received Document: 2 Misc. Amount: 0

Order Document: 2 Invoice Amount: 120 Net Amount: 120

Select	No	Accession No	Title	Expiry Date	Price
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	B2	00003	Colon classification	07/07/2020	60
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	B3	00002	Artificial intelligence	07/07/2020	60

**Save**

- Invoice & Receiving → Select Order Number → Add Invoice Number → Invoice Receiving Date → Forwarding Date → Received Document → Invoice Amount → Discount Amount → Overdue Amount → Miscellaneous Amount → Net Amount → Select the titles → Save.

## Binding → Payment:

**Binding**

Select Accession #
Order For Binding
Invoice & Receiving
Payment

Invoice No	INV14	Bank Name	SBI
Payment Amount	120.0000	Branch Name	Infocity
Payment Date	07/06/2020	DD/Cheque	XX1234
Mode Of Payment	Demand Draft	Forward Date	07/06/2020
Forward Mode	Register Ad.		
Remark			

Save

- Payment → Select Invoice number → Payment Amount → Mode of Payment → Forward Mode → Bank Name → Branch Name → DD/Cheque number → Forward Date → Save.

## Maintenance → Damaged:

**Damaged**

Accession No 00004

Title Artificial Intelligence

Author Rich, Elaine
 Status Damaged

Accession No	Book Title	Status
00001	मेरे सपनों का भारत	Damaged
00005	Dictionary of Library Science	Damaged
00004	Artificial Intelligence	Damaged

Damaged
Repaired

- Damaged → Enter Accession number → Click on Damaged.
- To Re-introduce for circulation → Select the title → Click on Repaired.

## Maintenance → Missing:

**Missing**

Missing Process
Found Process

Member Code ST03BS200001
Accession No 00005
Title Dictionary of Library Science

Author 
Status 
Available

Accession No	Missing Reporting By Member	Forename	Surname	Missing Date	
00001	ST03BS200001	Library	User 3	01-07-2020	
00004	ST03BS200001	Library	User 3	01-07-2020	

Save

- Missing Process → Add Member Code → Accession Number → Save.

**Missing**

Missing Process **Found Process**

Accession No	00004	Title	Artificial Intelligence
Status	Missing	Author	
Reported Member	ST03BS200001	Missing Date	01/07/2020
Trace By Member	Library Staff	Found Date	08/07/2020
Remark	Found in circulation area		

**Found**

- Found Process → Add Accession Number → Click on Found button.

### Maintenance → Withdraw:

**Withdraw**

**Withdrawal Process** Re-Introduce

Accession No 00005

Accession No	Book Status	Title	Author	Material
00005	Available	Dictionary of Library Science	KAWATRA, P S	Textual Documents

**Remove** **Remove All** **Withdraw**

- Withdrawal Process → Add Accession Number → Click on Withdraw button.

**Withdraw**

**Withdrawal Process** **Re-Introduce**

Select	Accession No	Title	Status
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	00005	Dictionary of Library Science	WithDraw

**Available**

- Re-Introduce → Select the Title → Click on Available button.

## Maintenance → Reports:

### Location Status:

The screenshot shows the 'Location Status' report interface. At the top, there are dropdowns for 'Select Library' (set to 'all') and 'Select Stat' (set to 'Bindings'). Below these is a toolbar with navigation and printing icons. The main content area is titled 'Item Status' and contains a table with the following data:

Serial No	Title	Author	Accession No
1	Artificial intelligence	Rich, Elaine,	00002
2	Colon classification	Ranganathan, S. R.,	00003

Below the table, it says 'Printed On :01/07/2020' and 'Report generated by:SOUL 3.0'. A 'Send Mail' button is located at the bottom center.

- Location Status → Select Library → Library Status → Display.

### Maintenance:

The screenshot shows the 'Maintenance' report interface. At the top, there is a 'Select Report' dropdown menu. Below it, there are radio buttons for 'Lost Book Report', 'Missing Book Report' (which is selected), 'Binding List Report', 'Damage Book Report', and 'Withdraw Book Report'. Below these is a 'Date Between' field with a calendar icon, set to '01/07/2020' and '06/07/2020'. A 'Display' button is located below the date field. Below the 'Display' button is a toolbar with navigation and printing icons. The main content area is titled 'Missing Items' and contains a table with the following data:

Accession No	Title	Missing Date	Reported by	Found Date	Found by
00004	Artificial Intelligence	01/07/2020		7/6/2020 12:00:00 AM	
00004	Artificial Intelligence	01/07/2020	ST03BS200001	7/6/2020 12:00:00 AM	
00006	Dictionary of Library Science	01/07/2020			
00001	मेरे सपनों का भारत	01/07/2020	ST03BS200001	7/6/2020 12:00:00 AM	

- Maintenance → Select desired report option → Enter Date Between → And → Display.

-----XXX-----



## SOUL 3.0: Acquisition Module

SOUL 3.0

Acquisition

Suggestions Orders Accessioning Payment

Request Gratis Item Select For Approval Approval Process Direct Approval Export And Delete Rejected Reports

Click on the <Acquisition> module. Select the first option <Suggestions> Request:

This Sub-menu deals with suggestion management consisting of request processing and the approval of the requested item.

### Acquisition → Suggestions-> Request

**New Request**

**Requesters Detail**

Request No 1 Reference No REF1 Date 18/06/2020

Department Computer Science Request Status Requested

Requested By Library User 3 (ST03BS200001) Supplier

**Items Detail**

Title The Scientific edge: the Indian Scientist from Vedic to modern Duplicate Check

Author's First Name Jayant Vishnu Author's Last Name Narlikar

Publisher Penguin India-New Delhi Add New Publisher

Type of Material Textual Documents ISBN 9780143030287

Edition Year 2003

No of Copies 2 Price 220

Currency India Rupees Conversion Rate 1.00 Total 440

Budget Books(2020-2021)-31-03-2021 Ignore Budget

Remark

Add Delete Browse Save Clear

All fields in red font are mandatory.

#### Requester's Detail:

- Give Reference Number-> select department from the dropdown menu -> select requested by from dropdown menu.

## Items Details:

- Add Title-> Author's first name -> Author's last name i.e. surname -> Select Publisher from dropdown menu -> Select Type of material from dropdown menu -> ISBN -> Edition -> Year of Publication -> No. of Copies -> Price -> Currency -> Select Budget from dropdown menu -> Remarks if any -> Save.

## Select for Approval:

- Select the titles to be approved by opting to go either by Department wise or budget wise otherwise 'All' and save.

## Approval Process:

- Select Filter option → Edit the no. of copies to be approved → Click Approve/Reject → Enter approving committee & remarks → Save.

**Direct Approval:** (If you want to ignore the above steps) There are some occasions when routine Approval procedure is bypassed based on recommendations committee.

### Direct Approval

Requesters Detail	
Request No	3
Reference No	REF3
Date	29/06/2020
Department	Library Science
Request Status	Requested
Requested By	Library User 1 (ST02BL200001)

Items Detail	
Title	Artificial Intelligence
Author's First Name	Elaine
Author's Last Name	Rich
Publisher	McGraw-Hill-Noida
Type of Material	Textual Documents
ISBN	9780070522633
Edition	3rd ed
Year	1990
Requested Copies	2
Price	683
Currency	India Rupees
Conversion Rate	1
Total	1366
Approval Date	29/06/2020
Approved Copies	1
Budget	Books(2020-2021)-31-03-202
Approved By	Librarian
Remark	

**Buttons:** Add, Delete, Browse, Save

- Select Department & requester → Enter Book details → Save.

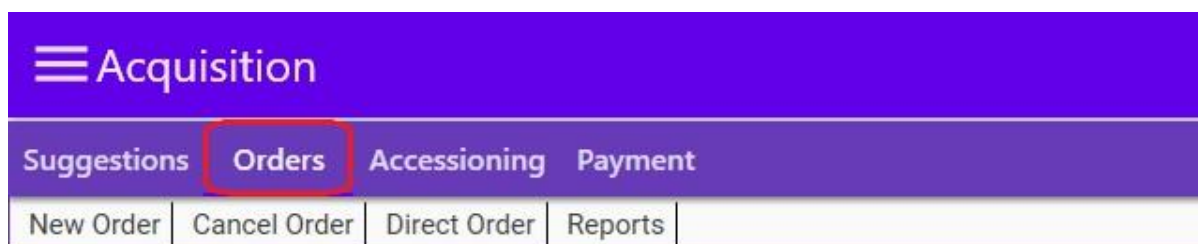
## Export & Delete Rejected

- Select the date upto which request is to be deleted → Search → Export & Delete.

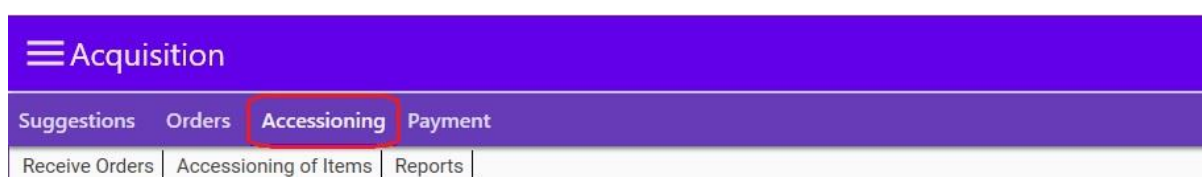
## Letter for Approval

- Generate letter for requesters whose books has been approved.

## Acquisition → Orders



- **New Order** → Enter Order No (If Auto Letter No. Is not active) → Select Supplier → Edit order date & expected date → Add Item → Select filter option → Select book (clicking on check box on left) → Save (from Add Item) → Save
- **Cancel Order** → Select Order Number-> Date → Select Title → Cancel Order
- **Acquisition → Accessioning**



## Receive order:

**Receive Orders**

Supplier Name: Ess Ess Publications  All Orders

Order No: ORD2 Enter items in Receive Now Column

Select	Title	Author	Publisher	ISBN/Year/Edition	Ordered Copies	Prev.Received	Receive Now
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Colon Classification: The Basic Classification	S. R. Ranganathan	Ess Ess Publications	9788170004233 / 2008 / 6th ed	1	0	0

**Item Summary**

Title	Colon Classification: The	Ordered Copies	1	Received Items	0	Pending Items	1
-------	---------------------------	----------------	---	----------------	---	---------------	---

Select Supplier → Select order no → Select the book → Enter the number of books to be received in the **Receive Now** column → Receive.

## Accessioning of Items:

Accessioning of Items

Regular Items  Gratis Items Last Accession 0

Filter By

Title  Supplier Ess Ess Publications  Receive Date 29-06-2020 To 29-06-2020  Order ORD1

Select	ID	Title	Author	Publisher	Edition	Price	ISBN	Acc No
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	Colon Classification: The Basic Classification	S. R. Ranganathan	Ess Ess Publications	6th ed	441.00	9788170004233	00003

Auto Assign

**Auto Assign**

Collection Type: General

Last Accession No.:

Prefix or Suffix: G

Consider As:  Prefix  Suffix

Starting number:

Total Length: 0

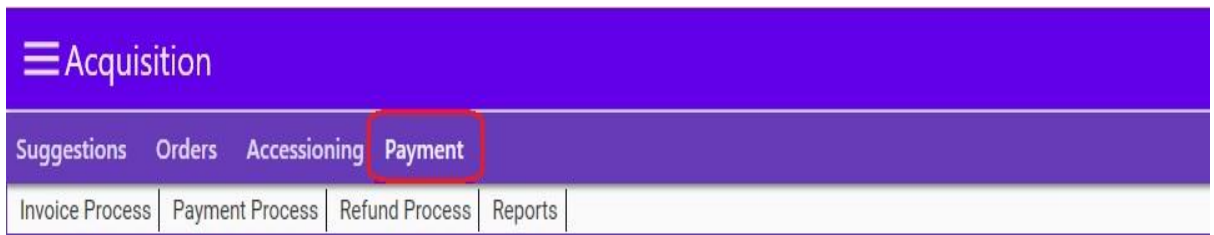
- Regular Items;
- Select from different filter options to view the books
- Select Supplier -> Order Number -> Date -> Select the Title/titles -> Assign accession no. in the last column individually or
- Auto assign-> Collection type -> Prefix/Suffix -> Starting no. -> Ok -> Merge and Save -> Ok-> Merge and Save.

### Other Options:

- Import MARC → Import a MARC 21 record for a book
- Find Title → Search for the book in the catalogue → Double click the title → Merge with Existing (to add accession no. To the existing record)
- Merge & Save → To create a single record for all the selected books with different accession number.



## Acquisition → Payment



### Invoice process:

The screenshot shows the 'Invoice Process' form. It includes fields for Payment Type (Regular), Supplier (Ess Ess Publications), Order No (ORD2), Invoice No (INV001), Date of Order (29-06-2020), Invoice Date (29-06-2020), and Reference No (REFN1). There is a 'Supplier Address' section with fields for Govind Street, Daryaganj, New Delhi, 110002, Delhi - India, and Email sales@example.com. A table lists items with columns for Select, Title, Ord.Item(s), Rec.Item(s), Paid Item(s), Currency, C.Rate, Price, Discount, and Net Price. The first item is 'Colon Classification: The Basic Classification' with a checked 'Select' box. A 'Calculate Total Amount' button is highlighted with a red box. Below the table is an 'Other Charges' section with fields for Total Net Amount (441), Over All Discount % (0), MiscCharges (60), Rounded Of (0.00), Total Amount (501), Budget (Books(2020:2021)), and Available Amount (50000.00). At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Select All', 'Process Invoice', and 'Title-wise Discount', with 'Process Invoice' highlighted by a red box.

- Payment type (Regular) -> Select Supplier from drop down -> Order no. from drop down -> Mention Invoice no. -> Date of Order -> Invoice Date -> Reference No.
- Select Book → Double click on left of book to edit actual price;
- Discount: Either Discount title wise-> Feed rate of percentage -> Save or directly mention the rate of percentage in Discount column
- Click on Calculate total Amount -> Enter details of overall discount etc (if not given titlewise) -> Process Invoice -> Ok.

## Payment Process:

**Payment Process**

Payment Process | Payment Settlement

Invoice No	Order No	Invoice Date	Total Amount
INV001	ORD2	29-06-2020	501.00

**Payment Details**

Reference No: RXXXXX | Payment By: Demand Draft

Cheque/DD/UTR No: 5XXXXX | Date: 29-06-2020

Bank Name: State Bank of India

Branch: Infocity

Total Invoice Amount: 501

Bank Charges: 0.00

Total Amount: 501

Forwarding Remarks:

**Add Invoice** | **Remove Invoice** | **Process Payment**

Payment process -> Add Invoice -> Select the Invoice no -> Add -> Select Payment by from drop down -> Feed Reference No. -> Cheque/DD/UTR No. -> Bank Name -> Branch -> Payment Date -> Process payment -> Ok.

## Refund process:

**Refund Process (A)**

Refund Process

Order: ORD5

Select	Invoice No	Order No	Invoice Date	Net Amount
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	INVNS	ORD5	07-07-2020	448.00

**OK** | **Close**

branch: Infocity

Total Amount: 448

**Add Item** | **Remove Item** | **Save**

**Refund Process (A)**

Order No	Invoice No	Invoice Amt	Invoice Date
ORD5	INVNS	448.00	07-07-2020

**Payment Details**

Payment By: Demand Draft

Cheque/DD/UTR No: XX1234 | Date: 07/07/2020

Bank Name: SBI

Branch: Infocity

Total Amount: 448

**Add Item** | **Remove Item** | **Save**

→ Add item → Select order no → Select invoice no → click OK → Enter payment details → Save

## Direct Order:

(For ignoring suggestion menu) → Enter order No & select Supplier → Add item → Enter the requested book details same as done in New Request form → Save (In the Direct order form) → Save.

## Report:

- **Purchase Order** → Orders can be generated with order number/date or vendor.
- **Reminder Letter** → Report can be generated either by supplier or expected date of receipt of item(s).
- **Order Report** → Orders can be generated according to status i.e. All orders Generated orders, completed orders, Cancelled orders, Partial orders as well as supplier wise list.

## Gratis Item:

Many times libraries are receiving documents as donations/gifts. These documents are known as 'Gratis' documents.

**Gratis Item**

Request No	2	Reference No		Status	Gifted
Gifted By	Mr. XYZ	Date	22/06/2020		

**Items Detail**

Title	Vikram Sarabhai: A Life				
Author's First Name	Amrita	Author's Last Name	Shah		
Publisher	Penguin India			<b>Add New Publisher</b>	
Type of Material	Textual Documents		ISBN	9780670999514	
Edition			Year	2007	
No of Copies	1		Price	330	
Currency	India Rupees	Conversion Rate	1.00	Total	330
Remark					

**Add From Existing**   **Add**   **Browse**   **Delete**   **Save**

**Gratis Items** → Enter details of book & gifted by → Save

**Select For Approval**

Department
  Budget

Select	Title	Author	Requester	Edition	Publisher	ISBN	Price	Department	Request Date
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	The Scientific edge: the Indian Scientist from Vedic to modern times	Jayant Vishnu Narlikar	Library User 3 (ST03BS200001)		Penguin India	9780143030287	220.00	Computer Science	18-06-2020

Select for Approval → Search the title by using different parameters → Select the title by clicking the check box → Save.

### Approval Process:

'Approval Process' consists of two steps for each title:

- [i] Approved budget selection and no. of copies approved and
- [ii] Approved by (either a Library Committee meeting date, etc).

Click the box against titles(s) approved and fill in the approval copies.

Fill up details like 'Approved By' -> click 'Approve' – Pop-up Box titled 'Approved By' will appear. Fill up appropriate details along with the 'Remark' – meeting date / name of the officials etc. and click 'Approve' and Save.

### Accessioning:

Select Gratis Items → select the titles → assign accession number/auto assign → merge and save.

### Report:

**Accession Report:** Tick the required fields in the check box → select optional parameters → Display.

**Barcode:** Select option from dropdown menu → Header → Select label from dropdown menu → Display.

The reports can be exported to Excel, Word and PDF formats.

--XXX--



# SOUL 3.0: Serials Control Module

Serials Control

Titles | Suggestions | Subscription | Payment | Check-In | Commercial Binding | In-House Binding

MARC21 Entry/Edit | Title Entry | Title Update | Article Indexing | Reports

## Titles → MARC21 Entry/Edit:

Marc 21 Entry/Edit

Main Entry | Optional Entry

Leader Serial ncs a22 1u 4500 Modify Fixed Field (006/8) Serials n |r|p|r| z||l|l|0 Modify

Title

Title Statement(245) Key Title(222) Publication Distribution etc.(260) Computer File Characteristics(256) Varying Form of Title(246) Former Title(247) Abbreviated Title(210)

Title added entry Nonfiling characters

Title \$a Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra Number of part \$n

Remainder of Title \$b Statement of responsibility \$c Name of part \$p

Current Publication Frequency (310) Coden Designation (030)

Frequency \$a Monthly Date \$b 02/07/2020 Coden Designation \$a JPAAA2

ISSN (022)

Level of international interest ISSN \$a 0022-4049

Holding Institution (850)

Holding Institution \$a Elsevier

Location (852)

Range

Copy No \$t 1 Shelving sche Shelving ordx

Accession No \$p J0001 Collect. Type \$b Reference Coded Location \$f Main Library Department Library Scient Supplier

Material Loose Issue Class No. \$k 512 Location \$a Second Floor Budget Serials Invoice No.

Status Available Book No. \$m GIO Shelving Location \$c Currency India Rupees Invoice Dt. 02/07/2020

Issue Restricted Price Date of Acq 02/07/2020

## Main Entry:

- **Leader** → Serials;
- **Fixed Field** → Serials;
- **Title Statement** → Enter Title → Remainder of Title → Statement of Responsibility → Number of Part → Name of Part;

- **Current Publication Frequency** → Frequency → Date → Coden Designation → ISSN → Holding Institution;
- **Location (Tag 852):** Add Accession → Material → Collection type → Class number → Coded Location → Shelving location → Shelving location → Department → Budget → Currency → Price → Supplier → Invoice number → Invoice date → Date of acquisition. If the title is restricted for circulation, click the check box;

### Optional Entry:

- Subject added entry (6xx) Uncontrolled term (653): Add keywords instead of subject headings. To add multiple keywords click on + sign;
- URL (856): Enter fully qualified URL specifying the protocol (i.e. http://, https://, ftp: etc) which will enable users to directly access that resource by clicking in OPAC;
- Save the record.

### Edit Records:

- Click Edit button → Select either Record ID, Range of Records, A particular accession number, By User Name, Range of Date Entered as well as by searching through OPAC by clicking 'Search' radio button.

### Titles → Title Entry:

#### Title Entry

1 of 2
2 of 2

<b>Title</b>	Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra <span style="color: red; font-size: 2em;">←</span>				
<b>Code</b>	J0001	<b>Bound (Y/N)</b>	N	<b>Annual Index (Y/N)</b>	N
		<b>Subscription Type</b>	Subscription <span style="color: red; font-size: 2em;">↑</span>		
<b>Abbreviated title</b>					
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics	<b>Subject</b>	Mathematics		
<b>Language</b>	English	<b>Physical Media</b>	Monographic Serials	<b>Class No.</b>	510
<b>ISSN</b>	0022-4049	<b>CODEN</b>	JPAAA2	<b>Location</b>	Amsterdam
<b>Publisher</b>	Book Publisher	<b>Place</b>	Ahmedabad	<b>Country</b>	India
<input type="checkbox"/> Publisher is Supplier					
<b>Supplier</b>	Book Supplier	<b>Place</b>	Ahmedabad	<b>Country</b>	India
<b>Receipt Mode</b>	Agent	<b>Budget</b>	Serials(2020:2021) <span style="color: red; font-size: 2em;">←</span>		
<b>Currency</b>	India Rupees	<b>Conversion</b>	1.00		
<b>Original Price</b>	8000	<b>Price (Rs.)</b>	8000.00		

Add Save Delete

### 1 of 2: All the field names with red font are mandatory:

- Enter Title → Bound (Y/N) → Annual Index (Y/N) → Select Subscription type → Abbreviated title → Department → Subject → Language → Physical Media → Class Number → ISSN → Coden → Location → Publisher → Place →

Country → Supplier → Place → Country → Receipt Mode → Budget → Currency → Original Price.

2 of 2:

**Title Entry**

1 of 2    **2 of 2**

Delivery Mode	Courier	Status	Active	Frequency	Monthly						
Volume From	224	To	224	Issue From	1	To	12	Lead Time	4	Issue/Volume	12
Subscription From	01/01/2020	To	31/12/2020	Date of Publication	01/01/2020	Edition	Asian				
Parallel title		Language	English								
Other Title											
Subject Keyword(s)											
URL Address	https://www.sciencedirect.com/journal/journal-of-pure-and-applied-algebra										
Note											

- Delivery Mode → Status → Frequency → Volume From → To → Issue From → To → Lead Time → Issue/Volume → Subscription From → To → Date of Publication → Edition → Parallel Title → Language → Other Title → Subject Keywords → URL Address → Note → Save.

## Titles → Title Update:

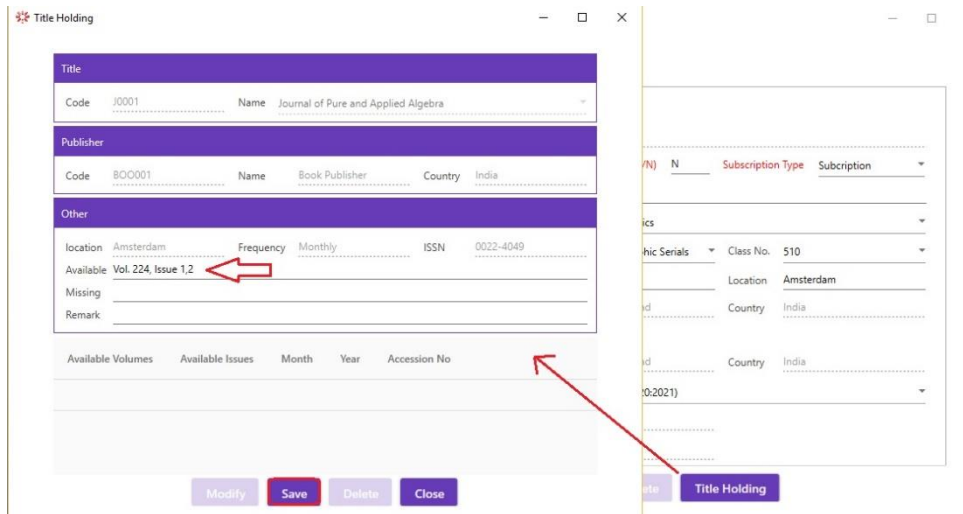
**Title Update**

Title \_\_\_\_\_

Code No	Title	ISSN
J0001	Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra	0022-4049

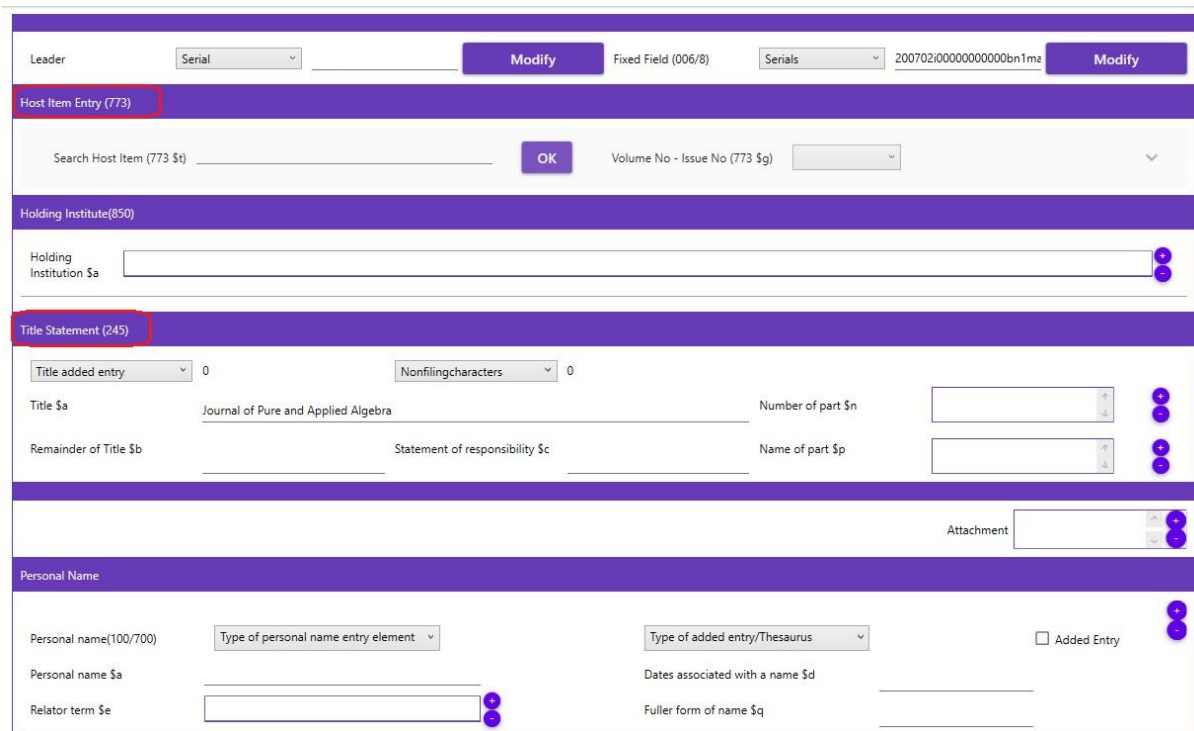
- Title update → Browse title → Double click on the title → Click on Modify button → Edit the required information → Save.

**Title → Title Update → Title Holdings:**



- Title Update → Title Holdings → Add Title → Publisher → Add Available → Missing → Save.

**Titles → Article Indexing:**



- Article Indexing → Leader select Serial → Fixed field select Serial → Search Host Item → OK → Select Volume Number & Issue number from drop down → Holding Institution → Title → Personal name → Relator term → URL → Note → Save.



## Title → Reports:

## Reports → Titles Report:

**Title Report**

Parameter Budget Head Filter value Serials **Display**

1 of 1 100% Find | Next

**Title Report**  
Report by Budget Head = Serials

Code No	Title	ISSN No.	Publisher	Suplier	Department	Frequency
J0001	Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra	0022-4049	Book Publisher	Book Supplier	Mathematics	Monthly
T0001	The Indian Express		Book Publisher	Book Supplier	Library Science	Daily

Printed On : 02/07/2020 1/1  
Report generated by-SOUL 3.0

- Reports → Title Report → Select Parameter → Select Filter Value → Display.

## Titles → Reports → Titles Holding Report:

**Title Holding Report**

Parameter Department Filter value Mathematics **Display**

1 of 1 100% Find | Next

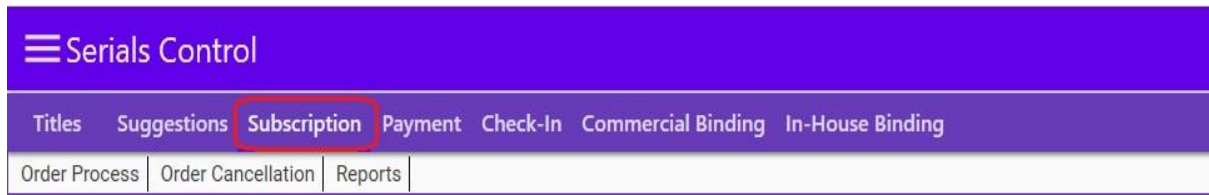
**Title Holding Report**  
Report by Department = Mathematics

Title	Publisher	Available Issues	Missing Issues	Remarks
Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra	Book Publisher	Vol. 224, Issue 1,2,3		

Printed On : 02/07/2020 1/1  
Report generated by-SOUL 3.0

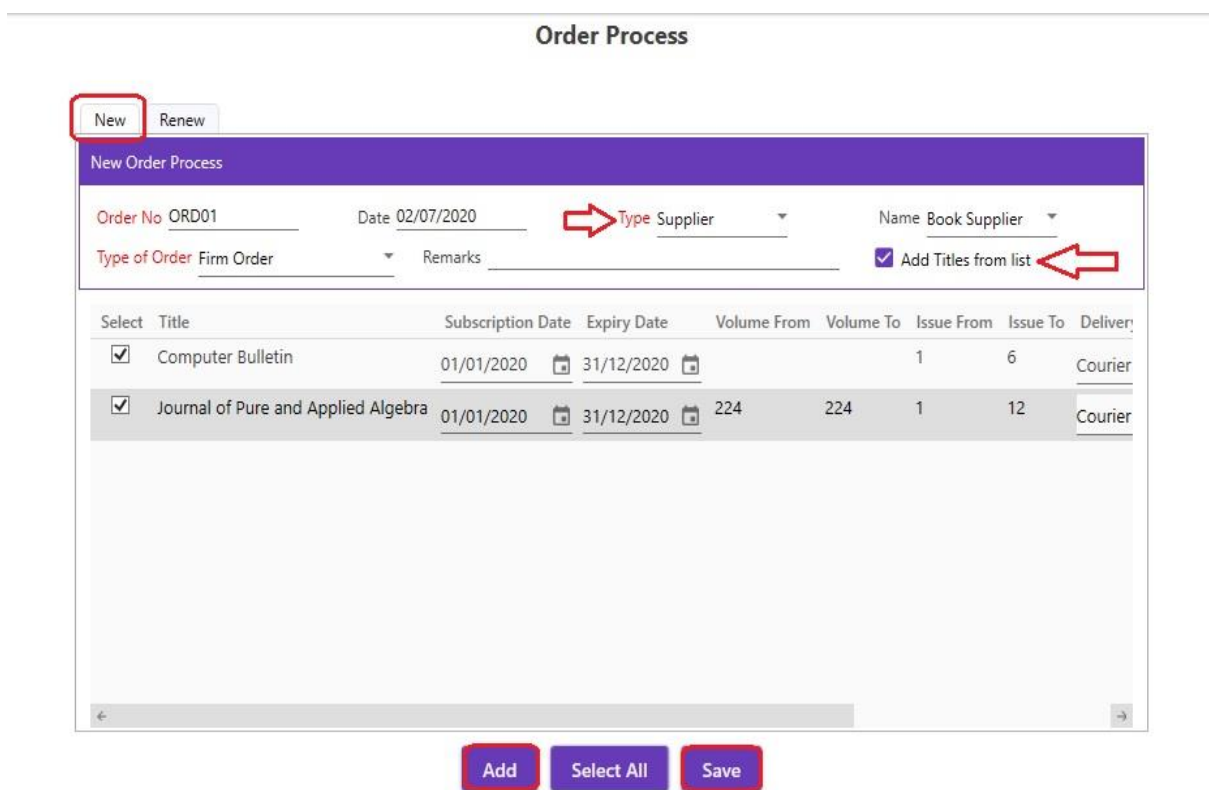
- Reports → Titles Holding Report → Select Parameter from dropdown → Filter Value for dropdown → Display.

## Subscription:



## Subscription → Order Processing:

## Firm Order:



- Order Process → New → Order Number → Date → Select Supplier/Publisher → Select name of the Supplier/Publisher from dropdown → Select Type of Order –Firm Order → Click on check box – Add titles from list → Add → Select the title → Pick → Select Delivery type → Select the Title → Save.

## Standing Order:

### Order Process

New Order Process

Order No: ORD2    Date: 02/07/2020    Type: Supplier    Name: Book Supplier

Type of Order: Standing Order    Remarks:     Add Titles from list

Select	Title	Subscription Date	Expiry Date	Volume From	Volume To	Issue From	Issue To	Delivery Type	Price
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	The Indian Express	01/01/2020	31/12/2020	89	89	1	366	Hand Delivery	1199

Enter Price/Issue

Enter price/issue for title The Indian Express

OK    Cancel

4

Add    Select All    Save

- Order Process → New → Order Number → Date → Select Supplier/Publisher → Select name of the Supplier/Publisher from dropdown → Select Type of Order –Standing Order → Click on check box – Add titles from list → Add → Select the title → Pick → Select Delivery type → Select the Title →Mention Price per Issue →OK → Save.

## Subscription → Order Cancellation:

Order Cancellation

Order No: ORD01    Cancellation Date: 02/07/2020     Cancel Whole Order

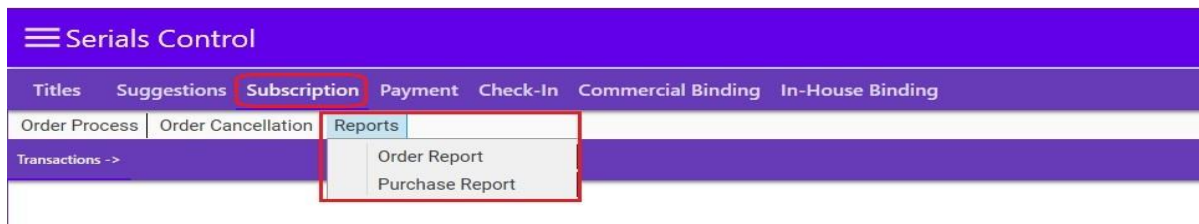
Order Date: 02/07/2020    Order Type: Firm Order    Remarks:

Select	Title	Subscription Date	Expiry Date	Volume From	Volume To	Issue From	Issue To	Del
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Journal of Pure anc	01-01-2020	31-12-2020	224	224	1	12	Cou

Select All    Cancel Order

- Order Cancellation → Order Number → Cancellation Date → Order Date → Order Type → Select the Title in the check box/Cancel Whole Order → Click on Cancel Order button.

## Subscription → Report:



## Reports → Order Report:

**Order Report**

Status: All Orders Between 01-06-2020 To 03-07-2020 **Display**

1 of 1 100% Find | Next

**Order Report**  
Report by Status-'All Orders' between date 1/6/2020 and 3/7/2020

Order No.	Order Date	Supplier/Publisher Name	Price	Order Type		
ORD01	02/07/2020	Book Supplier	8,000.00	Firm Order		
<b>SrNo</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Publisher Name</b>	<b>Edition</b>	<b>Copies</b>	<b>Total Price</b>	<b>Subscription Date</b>
1.	Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra	Book Publisher	Asian	1	8,000.00	01-01-2020 : 31-12-2020
ORD2	02/07/2020	Book Supplier	1,199.00	Standing Order		
<b>SrNo</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Publisher Name</b>	<b>Edition</b>	<b>Copies</b>	<b>Total Price</b>	<b>Subscription Date</b>
1.	The Indian Express	Book Publisher	Indian	1	1,199.00	01-01-2020 : 31-12-2020

Printed On :03/07/2020 1/1  
Report generated by-SOUL 3.0

- Report → Order Report → Select Status from dropdown → Date Between and To → Display.

## Report → Purchase Report:

**Purchase Oeder**

Select Option Order No. Select Order No. ORD01 **Display**

1 of 1 100% Find | Next

**Central Library**  
**Purchase Order**

To: Book Supplier Navrangpura  
Ahmedabad 123456  
Gujarat  
supplier@example.com

Order Date: 02/07/2020

Subject : Purchase Order No. ORD01

Dear Sir/Madam  
Please supply the item(s) as per enclosed list to the library on or beforeabove mentioned expected date as per following conditions. Please note that any discrepancy if found in supply, you should be responsible for it and you will have to bear the cost of returning the books. 1. Books of the latest edition are to be supplied (as case may be). 2. The price should be indicated in the original currencies. These should be converted in accordance with approved conversion rate of G.O.C. 3. If the supply is sent by post, the books should be sent per registered post. V.P.P. will not be accepted.

Yours faithfully  
Asst. Librarian

List of Items for Order No. : ORD01

Sr.No.	Title	Publisher Name	Subscription Period	Start Volume-End Volume	Start Issue-End Issue	Copies	Total Price
1.	Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra	Book Publisher	01/01/2020-31/12/2020	224-224	1-12	1	8,000.00
Total Order Price (Rs.)							8,000.00

**Send Mail**

- Report → Purchase Report → Select Option → Select Order Number for dropdown → Click on Display button.

## Payment:

Serials Control

Titles | Suggestions | Subscription | **Payment** | Check-In | Commercial Binding | In-House Binding

Invoice Process | Payment Process | Refund Process | Reports

## Payment → Invoice Process:

Invoice Process

All Order | Standing Orders

Invoice Processing

Publisher/Supplier Book Supplier Search Invoice No Invoice Date 02/07/2020

Invoice Details

Title	Order No	Start Date	End Date	Price	Handling Charges	Postage Charges	Currency	Conv Rate	Discount	Net Price	Copies
browse orders											
Book Supplier											
Order No. ORD01											
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra	01-01-2020	31-12-2020	224	224	1					

Miscellaneous Charges On Net Amount

Budget Postage Charge Net Amount In INR Total Net Amount

Save

- Invoice Process → All Orders → Select Publisher/Supplier → Search → Select Order Number → Select Title in the check box → Save.

Invoice Process

All Order | Standing Orders

Invoice Processing

Publisher/Supplier Book Supplier Search Invoice No INV01 Invoice Date 02/07/2020

Invoice Details

Title	Order No	Start Date	End Date	Price	Handling Charges	Postage Charges	Currency	Conv Ra
Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra	ORD01	01-01-2020	31-12-2020	8000	0	0	India Rupees	1

Calculate Total Amount Remove from List

Miscellaneous Charges On Net Amount

Budget Serials(2020:2021) Heading Charges 0.0

Postage Charge 0.0

Net Amount In INR 8000 Total Net Amount 8000

Save

- Enter Invoice Number → Click on Calculate Total Amount → Select Budget → Postage Charges → Handling Charges → Save.

## Payment → Payment Process:

**Payment Process (S)**

Select: Vendor ← Publisher/Supplier: Book Supplier ←

**Invoice Details**

Select	Invoice No	Order No	Invoice Date	Order Date	Net Amount	Amount Paid	Amt Payable	Remaining Amt
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	INV01		02-07-2020	02-07-2020	8000	0	8000	0

**Calculate**

**Payment Details**

Payment By: Demand Draft		Branch Name: INFOCITY	
Payment Date: 02/07/2020		Bank's Name: SBI	
Total Amount: 8000		Cheque/DD/UTR no.: 123XYZ	

**Save**

- Payment Process → Select Option → Publisher/Supplier → Select in check box the Invoice → Click on Calculate button → Select Payment Mode → Payment Date → Branch Name → Bank Name → Cheque/DD/UTR number → Save.

## Payment → Reports:

☰ Serials Control

Titles | Suggestions | Subscription | **Payment** | Check-In | Commercial Binding | In-House Binding

Invoice Process (S) | Payment Process (S) | Refund Process (S) | **Reports**

Transactions ->

- Forwarding to Account (S)
- Forwarding to Vendor (S)
- Invoice Report (S)
- Payment Report (S)
- Refund Report (S)

## Forwarding to Account:

This option facilitates user to generate forwarding letter to Account Section requesting them to release the payment. One can generate this letter by Invoice No, Payment Date and supplier.

**Forwarding to Account (S)**

Select option Invoice No  Select Invoice No INV01 **Display**

---

**Home Institute**  
Central Library  
**Forwarding Letter to Account Section**

**3**  
To,  
Account Section,  
Home University  
infocity  
  
Gandhinaagar-123456  
library@example.com

**Subject : Request for Payment**

Dear Sir/Madam We have received invoices with following details, It is being requested to process the payment for the same. Librarian

Invoice No	Invoice Date	Vendor Name-Place	Total Invoice Amount
INV01	02/07/2020	Book Supplier - Ahmedabad	8,000.00

Title	Price	Copies	Order No
Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra	8,000.00	1	ORD01
<b>Total Price</b>			8,000.00

**Send Mail**

## Forwarding Letter to Vendor:

**Forwarding to Vendor (S)**

Select option Invoice No  Select Invoice No INV01 **Display**

---

**Home Institute**  
Central Library  
**Forwarding Letter to Vendor**

**1**  
To,  
Book Supplier  
Navrangpura  
  
Ahmedabad 123456  
Gandhinaagar-123456  
supplier@example.com

**Subject : Forwarding Letter for Payment**

Dear Sir/Madam We have received invoices with following details, It is being requested to process the payment for the same. Librarian

Invoice No	Invoice Date	Vendor Name-Place	Total Invoice Amount
INV01	02/07/2020	Book Supplier - Ahmedabad	8,000.00

Title	Price	Copies	Order No
Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra	8,000.00	1	ORD01
<b>Total Price</b>			8,000.00

**Send Mail**



## Invoice Report:

One can generate invoice register through various parameters like supplier wise, Budget wise, Department wise, Payment status, Publisher, Currency, Invoice date between and Title wise. This report will give you status of each invoice.

Invoice No.	Order No.	Publisher Name	Supplier Name	Invoice Date	Invoice Amount
INV02	ORD2	Book Publisher	Book Supplier	02/07/2020	20.00
INV01	ORD01	Book Publisher	Book Supplier	02/07/2020	8,000.00

Printed On : 06/07/2020  
Report generated by-SOUL 3.0

## Payment Report:

This report will give you list of all the payments generated against each order and received invoice, one can generate this report by supplier, date and budget as report parameters.

Pay No.	Payment Date	Invoice No./ Date	Order No./ Date	Payment Mode	Cheque/DD No.	Payment Bank/ Amount Branch	Payment Remark
1	02/07/2020	INV01 02/07/2020	ORD01 02/07/2020	Demand Draft	123XYZ	8,000.00 Infocity SBI	
2	02/07/2020	INV01 02/07/2020	ORD01 02/07/2020	Demand Draft	123XYZ	8,000.00 SBI	
						INFOCITY	
Total Amount						16,000.00	

## Refund Report:

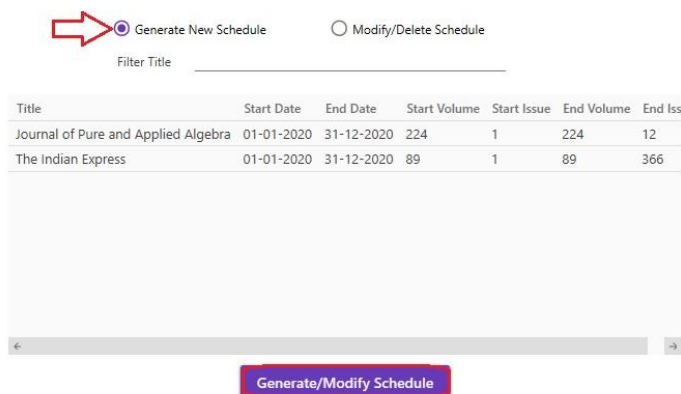
This option facilitates users to generate the report of refunded amount between particular dates.



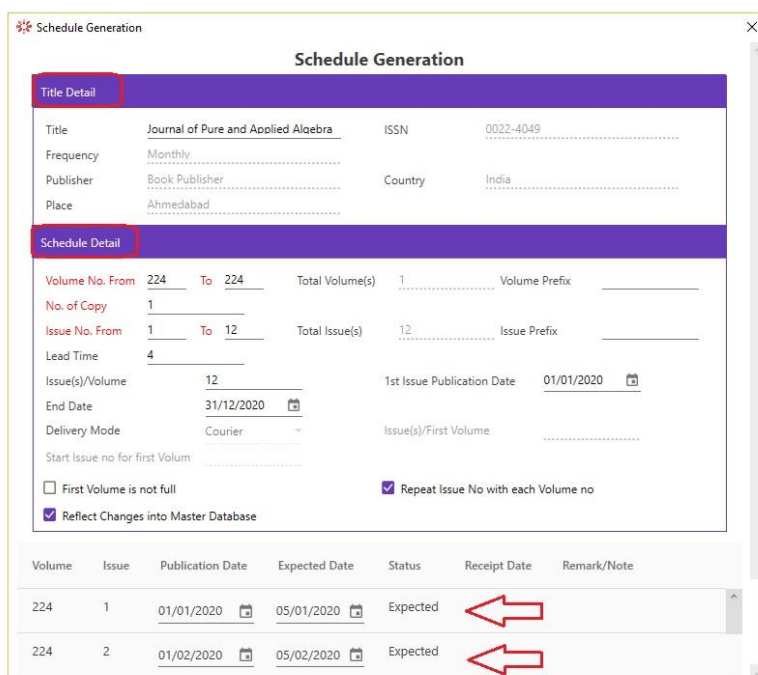
## Check In:



## Schedule Generation:



Schedule Generation → Generate New Schedule → Filter title → Select or Double click on the title → Generate Schedule.



Generate Schedule → Save.

## Check-In → Non-Receipt Process:

Non-Receipt Process → Either filter by title or date → Search → Select the title → Click on Convert into Non-Received.

## Check-In → Check in Details:

**Check In Detail**

Title: Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra | Publisher: Book Publisher | ISSN: 0022-4049 | Frequency: Monthly | Country: India | Place: Ahmedabad

Volume	Issue	Publication Date	Expected Date	Status	Receipt Date	Accession No	Allow Issue/Return	Remark/Note
224	1	01-01-2020	05-01-2020	Received	03/01/2020		No	
224	2	01-02-2020	05-02-2020	Received	04/02/2020		No	
224	3	01-03-2020	05-03-2020	Received	06/03/2020		Yes	
224	4	01-04-2020	05-04-2020	Received	03/04/2020		Yes	
224	5	01-05-2020	05-05-2020	Non-Received	07/05/2020			
224	6	01-06-2020	05-06-2020	Expected	02/07/2020			

Buttons: Add, Save, Delete, First, Next, Previous, Last

Check in Details → Select Title from dropdown → Change Status as Received → Accession Number (Optional) → Allow Issue/Return: Select from dropdown Yes/No → Remarks/Note → Save.

## Check-In → Remove Received:

**Remove Received**

Display All  Filter

Filter:  Title: Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra

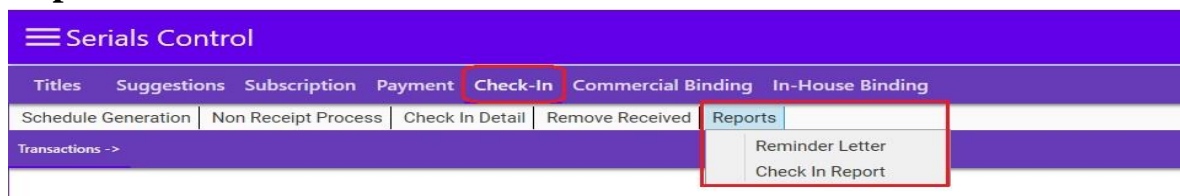
Received Between: \_\_\_\_\_ And: \_\_\_\_\_ **Search**

Title	Volume	Issue	Date of Publication	Expected Date	Rece
Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra	224	1	01-01-2020	05-01-2020	03-C
Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra	224	2	01-02-2020	05-02-2020	04-C
Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra	224	3	01-03-2020	05-03-2020	06-C
Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra	224	4	01-04-2020	05-04-2020	03-C

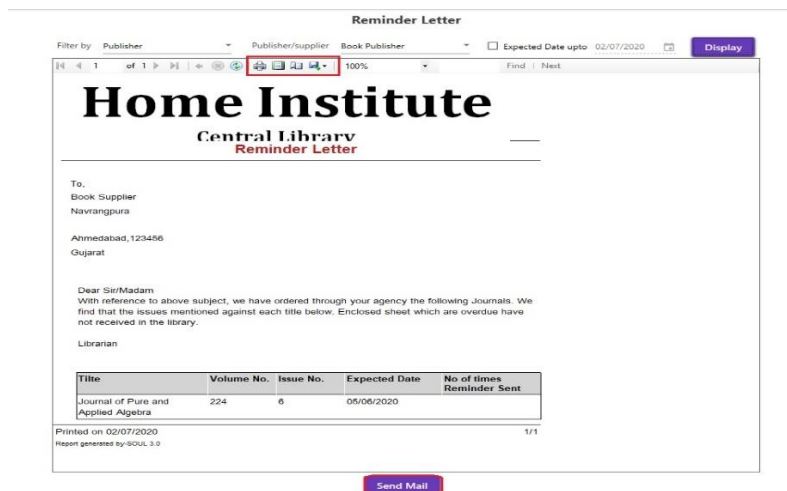
**Export & Delete**

Remove Received → Filter either by Title or Received between and date → Search → Export & Delete.

## Reports:

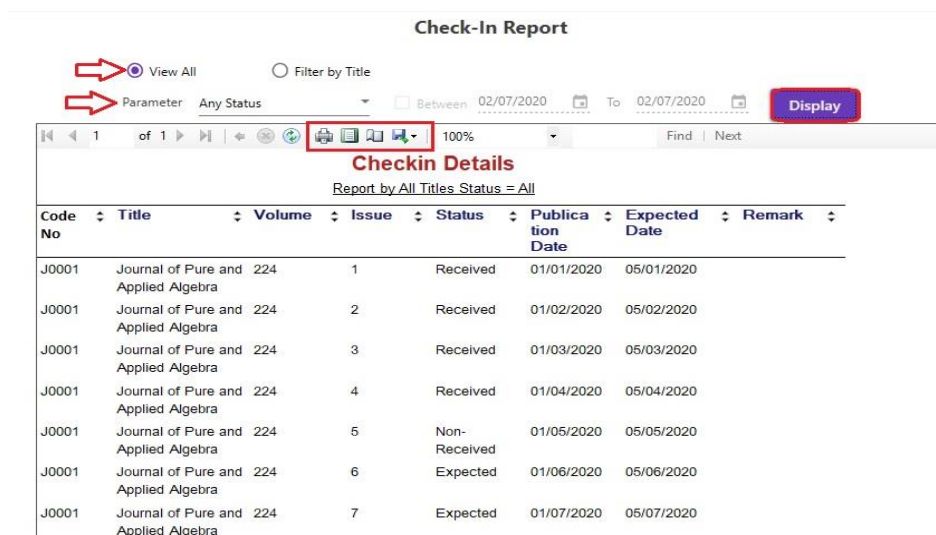


## Reports → Reminder Letter:



Reminder Letter → Filter by: Select from dropdown → Select publisher/Supplier → Expected date upto → Display.

## Reports → Check-in Report:



Check-in Report → View all/Filter by Title → Select parameter from dropdown → Date between and To → Display.

## Serials Control → Commercial Binding:



## Commercial Binding → Preparation of Sets:

**Preparation of Sets**

**Set Details**

Set No:  Received On/Before:

Title:  ISSN:  Frequency:

Book Publisher:  Place:  Country:

Check	Volume	Issue	Sr. No	Publication Date	Receipt Date	Status	Remark/Note
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	224	1	1	01/01/2020	01/03/2020	Received	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	224	2	2	02/01/2020	02/04/2020	Received	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	224	3	3	03/01/2020	03/06/2020	Received	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	224	4	4	04/01/2020	04/03/2020	Received	

**Binding Details**

Binding Type:  Binding Colour:

Embossing Type:  Embossing Text:

First Page:  Last Page:

Index (Y/N):

Remark:

Commercial Binding → Assign Set Number → Received on/before Date → Select Title → Search → Select from check box Issues → Select Binding Type → Embossing Type → Binding Colour → Mention Embossing Text → First page → Last page → Index → Save.

## Commercial Binding → Order Process:

**Order Process (SC)**

Order No. ORDN123  
Date Of Order 03/07/2020  
Expected Date 07/07/2020  
Binder Name  
Binder Group  
Budget Head Serials(2020:2021)

S01 - Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra

Check	Set Value	Set Price	Set No	Bind Type	Binding Colour	Emboss Type	Order Remark
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2666.67		S01	Cloth Binding	Brown	Gold	

Remark

Retrieve Save Delete First Next Previous Last

Order Process → Assign Order Number → Date of Order → Expected Date → Select Binder Name → Budget Head → Select the set in Check box → Save.

## Commercial Binding → Receiving:

**Receiving (SC)**

In House Receiving

Order No. ORDN123  
Binder  
Binder Group  
Last Accession No

Check	Set No	Accession No	Accession Date	Classification No	Location	Starting Page
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	S01		03/07/2020	025.43	First Floor	1

Retrieve Save Select All Auto Assign Delete

Receiving → Select Order Number from dropdown → Select in Check box Set Number received → Auto Assign (Accession No.) → Save.

## Commercial Binding → Invoice Process:

**Invoice Process (SC)**

**INVOICE PROCES**

Invoice No:  Date Of Invoice:

Binder:  **Add Order**

Order No	Send Date	Receipt Date	Budget Code	Price	Overdue Fine
bindername					
Binder Name			Binder Group		
Order No	Receipt No	Send Date			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ORDN123	03-07-2020	03-07-2020		

Save
Select All
Cancel

Invoice Process → Assign Invoice No. → Select Binder → Add Order → Select in Check box → Save.

**Invoice Process (SC)**

**INVOICE PROCES**

Invoice No:  Date Of Invoice:

Binder:  **Add Order**

Order No	Send Date	Receipt Date	Budget Code	Price	Overdue Fine
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ORDN123	03-07-2020	03-07-2020	Serials(2020:2021) 150.0000	0

Forward No:  Forward Date:  To Whom:

Percentage Discount:  Misc. Amount:  **Calculate**

Invoice Amount:  Net Amount:

Save
Select All

Select in Check box Order No./ Select All → Calculate → Save.

## Commercial Binding → Payment:

**Payment (SC)**

Display All   
  Filter by   
 Binder Name

Check	Invoice No	Invoice Date	Order No	Net Amount	Paid Amount	Amount payable	Payment Date
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	INVN123	06-07-2020	ORDN123	150.0000			07/07/2020

**Payment Details**

Receipt Note No	REC11	Bank Name	SBI
Receipt Note Date	07/07/2020	Branch	Infocity
Pay mode	Draft	Bank Charges	25
Cheque/Draft No	XX1234	Date Of Cheque/Draft	07/07/2020

**Forward Details**

Reference Nc	Date	07/07/2020	Mode	Courier
Remark				

**Acknowledgement Details**

Reference Nc	Date	07/07/2020
Remark		

Save

Payment → Display All / Filter by Binder Name → Select in check box the order no. → Payments Details: Receipt Note No., → Receipt Note Date → Pay mode → Cheque /Draft No. → Bank Name → Branch → Bank Charges → Date of Cheque → Forward Details: Reference No. → Date → Mode → Remark → Acknowledgement Details: Reference No. → Date → Save.

## Commercial Binding → Binding Reports:

☰ Serials Control

Titles
Suggestions
Subscription
Payment
Check-In
Commercial Binding
In-House Binding

Preparation of Sets (SC)	Order Process (SC)	Receiving (SC)	Invoice Process (SC)	Payment (SC)	<b>Reports</b> Reminder To Binder (SC) Binding Report (SC) Binding Purchase Order (SC) Bound Volume Label (SC)
--------------------------	--------------------	----------------	----------------------	--------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Transactions ->

## Reports → Reminder to Binder:

You can send reminder letter to binder if you have not received the bound volume till the expected date of order.

Reminder to Binder → Select Binder Name → Expected Date upto → Display.

## Reports → Binding Reports:

**Binding Report**

View All Titles     Filter By Title

Parameter: Binderwise    Value: Binder Group    **Display**

1 of 1    100%    Find | Next

**Binding Report**  
Report by All titles and And Binderwise

Set No.	Binder Name	Budget Name	Price Order No.	Remark
S01	Binder Group	Serials	150.0000	ORDN123
Title	Volume No.	Issue No.		
Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra	224	1		
Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra	224	2		
Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra	224	3		
Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra	224	4		

Printed On : 03/07/2020    1/1  
Report generated by-SOUL 3.0

Binding Report → View All Titles/ Filter by Titles → Select Parameter from dropdown → Select Value from dropdown → Display.

## Reports → Order for Binding:

You may generate purchase order of the binding set and send it to binder through this option.

Order for Binding → Select option: Order No./ Order Date / Binder from dropdown → Select : Order No./ Order Date / Binder from dropdown → Display.



## Reports → Bound Volume Label:

**Bound Volume Label**

Commercial Binding    In-House Binding

Select option   Binder   Select Binder   Binder Group   **Display**

1 of 1   100%   Find | Next

Sr. No	J0001
Volume, Issue No. - Month/Yr.	224 ,1- 1/2020
	224 ,2- 1/2020
	224 ,3- 1/2020
	224 ,4- 1/2020
Price(Rs.)	2,816.67
Accession No.	00009
Class No.	020.43

Bound Volume Label → Commercial Binding / In-House Binding → Select option from dropdown → Again select appropriate option from dropdown → Display.

--XXXXX--